This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

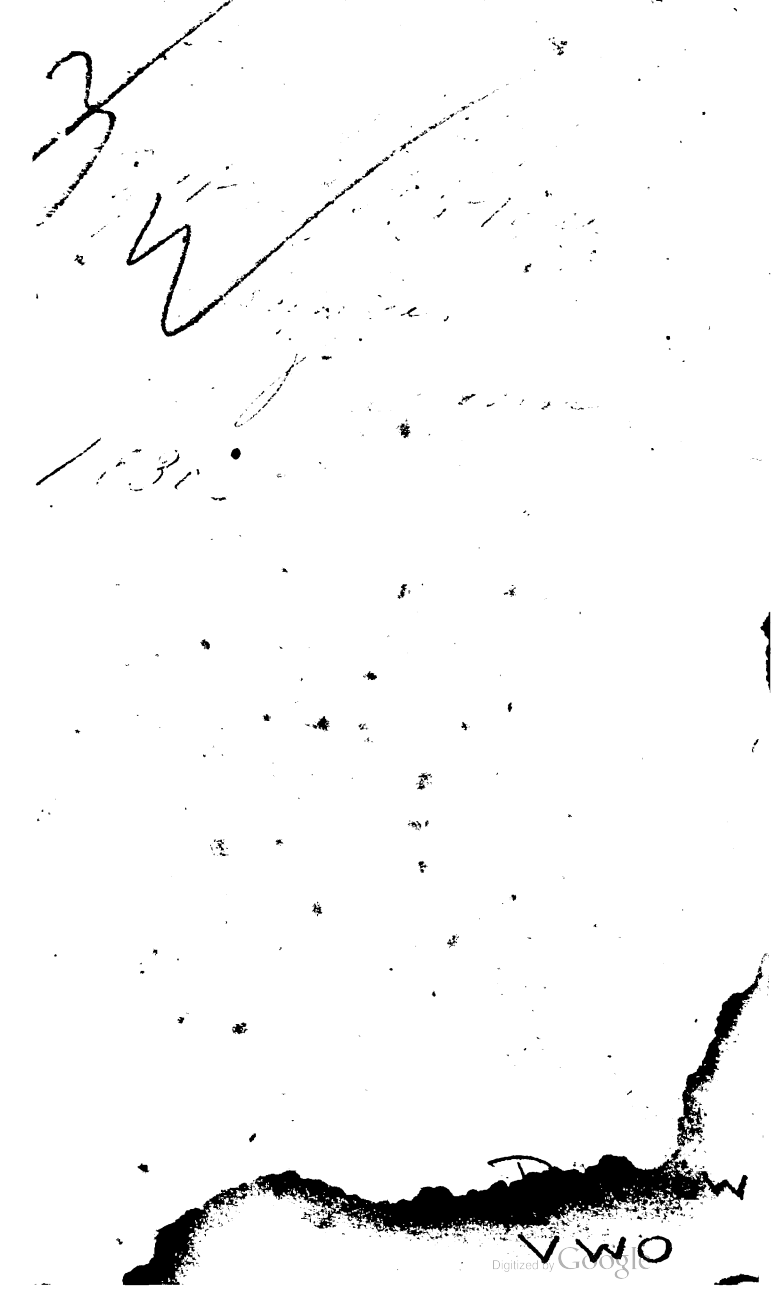
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google


VWO
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

SCOTT'S

MILITIA TACTICS;

COMPRISING THE DUTY OF

INFANTRY,

LIGHT-INFANTRY,

AND

RIFLEMEN.

IN SIX PARTS.

BY PIERCE DARROW,

LT. COL. OF INFANTRY, AUTHOR OF "THE ARTILLERIST," AND TEACHER OF MILITARY TACTICS.

SECOND EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED.

HARTFORD:

OLIVER D. COOKE.

1821.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.
1914

District of Connecticut, ss.

L. S.

BE IT REMEMBERED; That on the eleventh day of October, in the forty-sixth year of the independence of the United States of America, PIERCE DARROW of the said District, hath deposited in this office the title of a Book, the right whereof he claims as author, in the words following, to wit:

"*Scott's Militia Tactics; comprising the duty of Infantry, Light-*
"*Infantry, and Riflemen. In six Parts. By Pierce Dar-*
"*row, Lt. Col. of Infantry, author of 'The Artillerist,' and*
"*teacher of Military Tactics.*"

In conformity to the Act of the Congress of the United States, entitled, "An Act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts, and Books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned."

CHAS. A. INGERSOLL,
Clerk of the District of Connecticut.

A true copy of Record, examined and sealed by me,

CHAS. A. INGERSOLL,
Clerk of the District of Connecticut.

E. Clark, *Print. Middletown.*

Digitized by Google

INTRODUCTION.

I HAVE entered upon this work with diffidence, knowing my inability to perform so arduous a task as prescribing rules and regulations for the government of the militia, which, in a republican government like ours, must be considered as the bulwark of the nation. But being solicited by a number of able officers, and my employment affording me ample time, and my business leading me habitually to the study and practice of military duty, I have undertaken the subject solely with a view to promote the discipline of the militia. If I have been so fortunate as to advance, in any degree, the knowledge of that important branch of our national defence, I shall feel myself amply rewarded for the extreme labour and study which I have bestowed in compiling and arranging this work. But its use must depend in a great measure on the patronage which government see fit to bestow.

If, in the execution of this work, I have adopted the most familiar language to express my ideas, I trust it will not on that account be less acceptable to my fellow-soldiers.

Congress, in 1820, passed a resolve, that the rules and regulations adopted for the army of the United States, should be the governing principle for the militia of the several States, so far as applicable to their particular organization. And the system which is now in use in the army is called "Scott's Exercise." Of this, Colonel

Digitized by Google

Gardner has written a compend, although containing many variations and additions: and it has also been abridged by Captain Potter.

In 1820, New-York took up the subject, and adopted "Gardner's Compend," for the government of the militia of that State, and ordered copies thereof to be distributed to all the field officers; and a copy of "Potter's Abridgment" to each commissioned officer.

These systems are all calculated for actual service, and are not applicable to the militia of any of the States. New-York, which having made the attempt to adopt them, found many parts inconsistent and inapplicable to the militia, and it became necessary to vary them.

Massachusetts formerly adopted "Maltby's Elements of War," for the government of the militia of that State, which is much better calculated for their particular wants. Four thousand copies of this work were ordered to be distributed to the officers at the expense of government.

In 1821, Massachusetts and Connecticut established the law of Congress, but finding on examination that the system by them adopted was inapplicable to the militia, provision was made in the act for such alterations and amendments as were rendered necessary to apply the system to the militia; and a committee was appointed by this State, to report what alteration was necessary to be made in the system established by Congress, to be practised by them.

At this time, the first edition of this work was published and presented to the committee, who proposed such alterations as are contained in this edition. As Congress have never adopted any system of exercise for the rifle corps, this committee were instructed to report a sys-

Digitized by Google

tem of exercise for them also, which is contained in the latter part of this work.

Congress, in adopting the army regulations for the government of the militia, undoubtedly had a view to the embarrassment that would be occasioned when the different troops were called to act in concert. But all that is deemed necessary to remedy this evil is, that the militia understand the different movements and words of command, and also the manual and platoon exercise as taught in the army. This, the author has been particularly careful to keep in view, so far as consistent and practicable with our organization; and troops having been taught after this system, will find no difficulty in putting in practice that of the army. But it is not deemed essential, for instance, that a sergeant in parading a company of militia for exercise, should use the same words of command, or be governed by the same rules of formation; it is sufficient that the result is the same. Neither is it important that the officers on company days be posted in battle order; the captain, for instance, on the right of his company in rank and file, and the subalterns all in rear.

This position of officers is at once seen to be improper for the militia on drill days; it having solely in view a line in battle order, and not for instruction.

While writing this work, the author has had an opportunity to put in practice every part as he advanced, and of making such alterations as were found necessary on their application. And he feels confident that the variations here proposed, and the additions which he has ventured to make, will be found useful to the militia, and not difficult in practice. With these views, the author submits the work in the following order.

Digitized by Google

The First Part comprises the drill, without arms, and the *manual* and *platoon* exercise, as taught before men are formed in battle order, and which I have done in the plainest and simplest manner possible, and as concise as the nature of the subject would admit.

The Second Part contains the mode of forming company, and their evolutions, and also a sword manual for officers. In this I have aimed at nothing new, but have endeavoured to simplify as much as possible the duty of both officers and privates, and to fit them for the field.

The Third Part embraces the formation of a battalion, with the review and inspection. In this part will be found many things new and important to the militia-man; particularly in regard to the mode of forming a battalion for exercise, and which the author has taken great pains to render plain and explicit, and which, if adopted, will be found to facilitate exceedingly the formation.

In the Fourth Part will be found various evolutions of a battalion, and the firings, and also a system of exercise for officers on days of officers' meeting, for the want of which, we have spent much of our time to no purpose.

The Fifth Part contains the rifle exercise, and movements of a company of light-infantry or riflemen in one rank, and the management of field pieces.

The Sixth Part comprises the various parts of camp duty.

In the elementary drill I have copied Scott, so far as that work extends; but to many parts I have added and enlarged for the purpose of rendering more plain and explicit the most important part of the soldier's duty.

The movements I have likewise copied, in a great measure, from the same author; but they are less numerous, and greatly abridged. The work from which this

Digitized by Google

is taken contains upwards of two hundred pages of movements ; but the author deems it of more consequence in the militia, that a regular system of discipline be taught, than to burthen them with a multitude of movements without understanding any.

The variations which I have made in the exercise are such as are now adopted in the army.

" Scott's System" does not contain any exercise for the *rifle*, or movements of *rifle* or *light-infantry* companies, but this embraces those several parts of duty, and is taken from the most celebrated authors of Europe and America, and is agreeable to what is practised in the army at this day.

The system above alluded to has no part of camp duty ; the object being principally to introduce a variety of movements calculated for an army in the field, but the present embraces both objects, and is founded on the system adopted by the army, and no other variations are admitted than are actually necessary when applied to the militia.

Digitized by Google

EXTRACT FROM THE MILITIA LAWS OF THE STATE OF CONNECTICUT.

"*And be it further enacted*, That the System of Discipline and Field Exercise which is, and shall be ordered to be observed in the regular army of the United States, in the different corps of Infantry, Artillery, and Riflemen, shall also be observed by the Militia, in the exercise and discipline of the said corps respectively throughout this State; excepting such deviation from the said rules as may be rendered necessary by the requisitions of this act, or by some other unavoidable circumstance."

This paragraph is quoted from the Law of Congress, which has established "Scott's Exercise" for the Infantry.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS.

PART I.

PAGE.

Questions and answers - - - - - - 13

THE DRILL OR DISCIPLINE OF THE SOLDIER.

First division. The soldier without arms - - 22
The facings - - - - - - - - - 23
The steps - - - - - - - - - 25
Common step, or march to the front - - *ib.*
Back step - - - - - - - - - *ib.*
Oblique step - - - - - - - - 26
Side step - - - - - - - - - *ib.*
Lock step - - - - - - - - - 28
Time step - - - - - - - - - 29
Balance step - - - - - - - - *ib.*
Second division. The position of the soldier with arms - - - - - - - - - 31
Words of command for the manual and platoon exercise - - - - - - - - - 32
Position of the soldier at ordered arms - - 33
Manual exercise - - - - - - - - *ib.*
Platoon exercise - - - - - - - - 39
First division of firing - - - - - - 40
Second division of firing - - - - - - 44
Third division of firing - - - - - - 45
The oblique firing - - - - - - - 47
Firing to the right when in two ranks - - *ib.*
Firing to the left when in two ranks - - - *ib.*
Firing while in three ranks - - - - *ib.*
To fire while kneeling - - - - - - 49

PART II.

CONTAINS THE MODE OF FORMING COMPANY, POSTING OF OFFICERS, &c.

Ranking and sizing and forming the men in two ranks 50

Digitized by Google

Table exhibiting at one view the situation of each officer in the company and battalion - - 56
Dressing a line - - - - - - - 58
To wheel into open column of platoons - - 59
Of the points of dressing - - - - - - 61
Moving to the front - - - - - - 62
Of wheeling distance - - - - - - 64
The march in column - - - - - - *ib.*
To change the direction of march to the right flank while on the march in column - - - 65
Marching in quick time - - - - - - 66
Common time - - - - - - - - *ib.*
Marching to the front in line - - - - - *ib.*
To change the step while on the march - - 67
To march with the rear rank in front, in line - *ib.*
To change the direction of march in column to the rear, while on the march - - - - 68
To form company on the march in column of platoons, right in front - - - - - - 69
To form platoons on the march - - - - - *ib.*
The company in open column of platoons filing to the front - - - - - - - - 70
To form platoons from file-marching - - - 71
To move a column to a flank while on the march *ib.*
To file from the right and left of platoons to the front, while on the march in column - - - 72
To change the front while marching by files on the right and left flank - - - - - - *ib.*
To file to the front from the right and left of ranks, marching in column - - - - - - 73
To form platoons from file-marching by ranks - *ib.*
To form a line from file-marching by ranks - *ib.*
To countermarch a line by files and change front - 74
To change the front of a line by sections - 77
To file into column to the rear - - - - - 78
To wheel into line from column - - - - 79
To file into column to the front - - - - - *ib.*
To wheel on a moveable pivot - - - - 80
To form a line in succession on the leading platoon 81
To change the head of the column on the march *ib.*

Digitized by Google

To diminish the front by breaking off files - - 82
To form files to the front - - - - - 83
To form open column of platoons - - - 84
To form close column on the right - - - 86
To display an open column to the left - - *ib.*
To display a column formed on the centre - 87
To display an open column by echelon - - 88
To form the square from column of platoons - 89
To open ranks while marching in column - - 90
To open ranks for passing in review - - *ib.*
To open ranks in line - - - - - - 91
To close ranks - - - - - - - *ib.*
To form a line to the right flank when marching by files - - - - - - - - - 92
To form to the front by files - - - *ib.*
To form the cross - - - - - - - 93
To reduce the cross and form column - - 94
Of the echelon - - - - - - - *ib.*
To advance in direct echelon - - - 97
Position of officers when the company are in one rank 98
To half wheel the line to the right by echelon - 99
To march to the front and right by echelon - *ib.*
To form the square from line by echelon - - 100
To reduce the square and form a line - - 101
Second division. To open and close files for exercise - - - - - - - - - 102
To form three ranks from one - - - - 103
To form three ranks from two - - - 104
To form three ranks from one, when the tallest are on the right and left - - - - - - 105
To form two ranks from three - - - 106
To form two ranks from three when formed from two *ib.*
To pile arms - - - - - - - - 107
To handle arms - - - - - - - *ib.*
Funeral exercise - - - - - - 108
Manual exercise for non-commissioned officers - 109
Non-commissioned officers' salute - - - 110
Firing at a target - - - - - - - 111
Salute by the colours - - - - - *ib.*
Sword manual of the officers - - - - 112

Digitized by Google

Of presenting swords - - - - - - 115
To return swords - - - - - - - 117
Of the inspection of arms - - - - - *ib.*

PART III.

DISCIPLINE AND EXERCISE OF A BATTALION, WITH THE REVIEW AND INSPECTION.

To parade the battalion - - - - - - 120
Arrangement of companies in line - - - 121
Instructions for the adjutant in parading the battalion 123
Table for the position of companies in line, and their number of files - - - - - - 124
To equalize the battalion - - - - - - 126
Directors or markers, their use and duty - 129
The duty of the captains on battalion days - - 131
Duty of the inspector - - - - - - 132
Duty of the sergeants who carry the colours - *ib.*
The standing review - - - - - - 133
Manual exercise of the battalion - - - 140
Platoon exercise of the battalion - - - 141

PART IV.

COMPRISES THE MOVEMENTS OF A BATTALION, AND THE FIRINGS.

Explanation - - - - - - - - 142

MANŒUVRES.

No. 1. Close column - - - - - - 143
No. 2. Close column displayed - - - - 145
No. 3. Double column on the centre - - 146
No. 4. Double column displayed - - - 147
No. 5. Close column on the right and left - - 148
No. 6. Close column on the right, left in front - 149
No. 7. Column displayed to the left on the rear *ib.*
No. 8. Column formed on the centre, facing the rear 151
No. 9. Countermarch of a column by files - 152
No. 10. Displayed to the right and face to the rear 153
No. 11. Filing into column to the front - 154
No. 12. To wheel a column into line - - 155

Digitized by Google

No. 13. To file into column to the rear - 156
No. 14. To file from the right of platoons into open column to the rear - - - - - - 157
No. 15. Changing of front from line - - 159
No. 16. To change front by wings - - - 160
No. 17. To reverse the wings while on the march in column - - - - - - - 161
No. 18. Marching in direct echelon - - - 162
No. 19. To advance in direct echelon from wings 164
No. 20. March in echelon to the rear - - 166
No. 21. To march to the front and right by echelon 167
No. 22. Display column by echelon - - 168
No. 23. Half wheel to the right by echelon - 169
No. 24. Half wheel to the left by echelon - 170
No. 25. Full wheel to the right by echelon - *ib.*
No. 26. To wheel the line to the left by echelon 171
No. 27. Half wheel to the left backward - 172
No. 28. Half wheel on the centre - - - 173
No. 29. Form the square by wings - - 174
No. 30. Reduce the square and form a line - 176
No. 31. To form the square by battalion - 177
No. 32. To form the square by wings from column 180
No. 33. Reduce the square of wings and form column - - - - - - - - - 182
No. 34. To form the square by battalion from column 183
No. 35. To reduce the square and form column 185
No. 36. To pass a defile in rear of the left flank 186
No. 37. To pass a defile in rear of the centre 187
No. 38. To pass a defile in front of the centre 190
No. 39. Passage of lines retiring - - - 192
No. 40. Wheeling into column to march right in front - - - - - - - - - 194
To form companies - - - - - - *ib.*
To form platoons - - - - - - - 195
To change the head of the column - - *ib.*
To reverse the order of march in column - - 196
To countermarch to the rear through the centre 197
To countermarch to the rear on the flanks - 198
To march by files - - - - - - - 199
To form platoons - - - - - - *ib.*

Digitized by Google

To march in quick time - - - - - - 200
Breaking off files from the front - - - *ib.*
Obliquing to the right - - - - - 201
A plan of a sham fight - - - - - *ib.*
To fire by independent files - - - - 204
To fire by platoons - - - - - 206
To fire by companies - - - - - *ib.*
To fire by divisions - - - - - *ib.*
To fire by wings - - - - - - 207
To fire by battalion - - - - - *ib.*
Instructions for officers, on days of officer meetings 209

PART V.

REGULATIONS FOR LIGHT-INFANTRY AND RIFLEMEN.

Introductory remarks - - - - - 215
Manual and platoon exercise for the rifle - 216
The position of the soldier at ordered arms - *ib.*
Manual exercise - - - - - - *ib.*
Platoon exercise for the rifle - - - - 222
First division of firing - - - - - 223
Second division of firing - - - - - 226
To fire by files - - - - - - 227
To fire while advancing - - - - - 229
To fire while retiring - - - - 230
Second division. Forming company - - 231
Position of officers - - - - - 232
Movements for light-infantry and riflemen - - *ib.*
Advance by files from the right - - - 233
Advancing from the centre - - - - 234
Retire by files from the right - - - *ib.*
Retire by files from the left - - - - *ib.*

TO FORM COMPANY FROM DIFFERENT POSITIONS, WHEN FILING FROM EITHER FLANK OR CENTRE TO THE FRONT OR REAR.

When advancing from the right - - - 235
When advancing from the left - - - - *ib.*
When retiring from the right - - - 236
When retiring from the left - - - - *ib.*

Digitized by Google

When retiring from the centre - - - 237
To retire by files from the right and left - - *ib.*
To form company when retiring from the right and left - - - - - - - - - 238
To form company when retiring from the right or left of sub-divisions - - - - - - *ib.*

MOVEMENT OF COMPANY IN COLUMN, FORMED IN ONE RANK.

MANŒUVRES.

No. 1. To change front of a column of sub-divisions when on the march - - - - - 239
No. 2. To change the direction of a march by wheeling of sub-divisions on the centre file, to the right-about - - - - - - - 240
No. 3. To countermarch a line, and change front 241
No. 4. Change of front by countermarch of sections on the centre - - - - - - 242
No. 5. To march in direct echelon of sections, to form a line to the front - - - - - 243
No. 6. Echelon change of position to a point distant, and not within the company - - 244
No. 7. The right of the company brought forward by echelon, and formed on the left so as to make a half wheel - - - - - - - 245
No. 8. The company are filed into column to the front, with right in front - - - - 246
No. 9. Successive formation of line, from open column, while on the march, to the right flank 247
No. 10. To form the wedge from open column of sections - - - - - - - - - *ib.*
Observations respecting the change of front, and forming sub-divisions from sections - - 248
Position and duty of the light-infantry and rifle companies - - - - - - - - 249
Position of the companies in line - - - 250
Duty of the light-infantry companies when paraded with the battalion - - - - - 251
Duty of the rifle companies - - - - *ib.*
Mode of performing the manual and platoon exercise *ib.*

Digitized by Google

Duty of musicians - - - - - - 252
Of the management of field pieces - - - *ib.*
To march on the flanks of the pieces, unlimber and man them - - - - - - - - *ib.*
To man pieces from column and continue the march to the front - - - - - - - 254
Words of command for the manual exercise of field pieces - - - - - - - - 255

PART VI.

OF CAMP DUTY.

Mode of laying out a camp - - - - 256
Order of encampment - - - - 257
Manner of entering a camp - - - - 258
Regulations for preserving order in camp - 259
Of roll call - - - - - - - - 262
Of the inspection of the men, their dress, &c. - *ib.*
Of the different beats of the drum - - - 263
The signals - - - - - - - 264
Of the service of guards - - - - - 265
Of relieving guards and sentinels - - - 266
Instructions to officers on guard - - - 269
Mode of challenging - - - - - 273
Receiving a party at the piquet - - - 274
Treatment of the sick - - - - 275
Honours due from guards to officers - - 276
Compliments to be paid by the troops - - 277
Salutes with field pieces - - - - 280
Military funerals - - - - - 281
Forms for warning companies - - - - 283

Digitized by Google

MILITIA TACTICS.

PART. I.

BEFORE we proceed to the discipline of a company, it may be proper to explain the different bodies of men which compose an army; and some of the technical terms, and the design and manner of the principal formations and movements generally that the reader may be better prepared to understand what may be found in the succeeding work, and which we will do by way of question and answer.

Q. *What is an army?*

A. An army is a body of men composed of a variety of corps or divisions; each of which is commanded and conducted by officers who are particularly attached to their respective corps, and to which only their command is extended. The whole are subject to the commander in chief; and the officer of every section subject to a superior. It is arranged into divisions, brigades, regiments, battalions, grand divisions, companies, platoons, or sub-divisions, sections and files.

Q. *What is a division?*

A. A division, in the sense to be used in military tactics, is a part of an army, usually consisting of two brigades, and is commanded by a major-general.

Q. *What is a brigade?*

A. A brigade is four regiments, and is commanded by a brigadier-general.

Q. *What number of companies constitute an infantry regiment?*

Digitized by Google

A. A regiment of infantry is composed of ten companies; eight companies called battalion companies, and two called light infantry companies; the whole are commanded by a colonel.

Q. *What other officers are there attached to a regiment?*

A. The officers of an infantry regiment are, a colonel, a lieutenant-colonel and major; these are called field-officers: an adjutant, paymaster and quarter-master; these are called commissioned staff: a sergeant-major and quarter-master-sergeant; these are called non-commissioned staff: a surgeon and surgeon's mate, and chaplain; these have no post in the line, and have no command. The artillery regiments are composed of twelve companies, and have an additional major.

Q. *What is a battalion of infantry?*

A. A battalion of infantry has been formerly understood to comprehend one half of a regiment, or five companies; a battalion of artillery four; so that an artillery regiment consists at present of three battalions. But Congress have of late passed a law, that ten infantry companies shall, in the field, be styled a battalion. But this does not affect the organization of the artillery; each battalion is under the immediate command of a lieutenant-colonel or major.

Q. *What is called a grand division?*

A. A grand division is two companies, or one fourth of a battalion, exclusive of the light infantry. Under the new law, a grand division is to be considered under the direction of the senior captain, who is posted on the right.

Q. *What is a company?*

A. A company of infantry, is organized to consist of sixty-four privates, which is commanded by a captain. The subaltern officers are, one lieuten-

Digitized by Google

ant, and one ensign. The non-commissioned officers are four sergeants, and four corporals; and there are two musicians attached to each company; so that a company may consist of seventy-seven members.

Q. *What is a platoon or sub-division?*

A. By platoon or sub-division is meant one half of a company when formed in two ranks, and is commanded by one of the subaltern officers. The word *platoon* has been generally used by ancient authors, and is still retained by some; *sub-division* is a modern term for platoon, and I think it much more of a technical one.

Q. *What is a section?*

A. A section is one half of a platoon and commanded by a non-commissioned officer.

Q. *What is meant by a file?*

A. A file comprehends as many men as there are ranks in the company.

Q. *I have often heard the phrase* rank and file *used; will you please to explain it?*

A. The term *rank and file* is differently understood by different officers. By some it is understood to mean all the non-commissioned officers and privates of the company; by others to be the corporals and privates only; and others to mean the privates alone. But others suppose it to mean, (and which will be considered the meaning in this work,) that all the men in a line constitute a rank, whether officers or privates; and one man in front and all in rear of him to be a file. So that when the company is formed in one rank, one man constitutes a file; and when in two ranks, two men make a file; when in three ranks, three men. So that a file consists of as many men as there are ranks in the company.

Digitized by Google

FORMATION.

Q. *What is meant by formation ?*

No. 1. A. Formation in the sense used in tactics, is the art of drawing up and arranging any body of men, according to certain rules and principles. It is not only applied to arranging and putting in order any particular corps, but to a great variety of situations in which such corps may be placed, with all the variety of changes; such as the close and open column, square, echelon, &c., &c. All these may be formed by certain movements according to technical rules; such as wheeling, filing, &c.

Q. *What is meant by a regimental line ?*

2. A. A regiment or battalion is said to be drawn up and formed in line, when the companies of which it is composed are paraded flank to flank, dressed by each other, on one general front. In the formation of the line, it is considered as having two points belonging to it, *viz.* the point of *appui*, and point of *formation*. The first is that part of the line where the leading flank of the first division rests, and on which, and from which the line is formed or prolonged. The point to which the line is continued is that of formation. The ground, therefore, occupied by a regiment, or any other corps, always fills the space between the two points of *appui* and *formation*. It may be paraded in two or more ranks. The line may be formed in two kinds of order, as it respects the ranks, viz. *Open order*, and *close order*.

Q. *What is open order ?*

3. A. When the rear rank takes ground to the rear, and the officers all move to the front.

Q. *What is close order ?*

A. Close order is when the rear is moved to the

Digitized by Google

front rank, within one, two, or three feet, and officers resume their posts in the line. The former is the order for show and parade, the latter for battle.

Q. *What is to be understood by a column?*

4. A. A body of men are said to be in column, when the several grand divisions, companies, platoons, or sections, which compose a regiment or battalion, are formed in front of each other; with the commanding flank dressed. Columns are of two kinds, close and open.

Q. *What is the difference?*

5. A. The close column is generally formed with an interval between the divisions of one pace; while that of the open column, takes a distance between each division (whether column of grand divisions, companies or platoons) equal to the front of the several divisions of which it is composed, so that when wheeled into line, the column shall have occupied sufficient ground for the formation of the line.

Q. *How is the close column formed?*

6. A. The close column is generally formed by filing platoons from line. It may be done by breaking the line into open columns, and closing the platoons to within one or two paces. It may be formed on any named division of the line, to the right or left, facing to the front or rear, of the original line.

Q. *How is the open column formed?*

7. A. The open column, right in front, is formed from line by wheeling on the left backward, or it may be done by filing from the right of platoons to the rear; and the reverse for left in front.

Q. *What is meant by a column of rout?*

8. A. It is so called in contradistinction to a column of manœuvre; *rout* indicating a destination to some particular place. It differs also from a column of manœuvre, inasmuch as the ranks of the di-

Digitized by Google

visions may be opened, and the troops may march at their ease, with arms sloped. The column is, however, to preserve order, and the wheeling distance; that if commanded to wheel into line, they shall not have covered more ground than is sufficient for the extent of the line.

Q. *What is meant by displaying?*

9. A. Displaying is the extending the divisions of a column into line on any named division. The close column is displayed by filing when the divisions successively uncover each other and march up to the line. The open column may be displayed by wheeling the divisions into *Echelon*, and march to the line, and formed on the front division.

Q. *What is meant by file-marching?*

10. A. File-marching is when the men of each rank follow each other in a line and in close order.

Q. *Will you describe what is meant by wheeling, and the pivots?*

11. A. To wheel in the sense applied to military tactics, is that movement of a rank or ranks of men embodied, to the front or rear, in such manner as to describe a part of a circle. While one flank moves on the extreme part of a circle, the other part is the centre of the circle, or the point or pivot on which the whole turns. The former is called the wheeling or reverse flank; the latter the pivot flank. Wheeling on the right or left, forward or backward, and on the centre from the halt, may be compared to the movement of a gate when governed by its hinges.

Q. *What is meant by Echelon?*

12. A. Echelon, as defined by JAMES, is as follows: (*Echelon—French.*) "Echelon the step of a ladder or stairs. A position in military tactics, where each division follows the preceding one like

Digitized by Google

the steps of stairs. And it is convenient in moving from a direct to an oblique or diagonal line."

Q. *What is meant by a countermarch and change of front?*

13. A. A countermarch, is when a corps moves from right to left, or from left to right: the right taking place of the left, and the left the place of the right. The countermarch is designed for the purpose of changing the front of a line, or the head of the column. Change of front in a military sense, is a change of the facing of the line to a new front, directly to the rear of the old one, combining also with the change of the wings or flanks, (with all the divisions and files of the corps) in such a manner that each officer and soldier retains the same relative situation as he held before the change; all which may be done on the same ground.

REMARKS.

That instruction may be communicated to answer the best purpose, much depends on the manner in which you begin to give instruction. It must be presumed in the succeeding work, that the officers are acquainted with all parts of their duty before taking the field; although it is to be feared that many have neglected it until they have obtained a command which requires their immediate service. To such I would recommend their acquainting themselves with their duty before they undertake to communicate it to others. Such officers may offer as an excuse that they have no opportunity to obtain knowledge. This is a mistake; it may be obtained from books. This, however, is a laborious way

Digitized by Google

of obtaining military knowledge. But there are always some officers who are acquainted with the duty, who may be applied to for instruction. The militia of this State, are so seldom brought into the field, that it cannot be expected that the officers will have an opportunity to acquire in that way the knowledge necessary to fit them for giving instruction to others. It must therefore be obtained in some other way. In our militia it is common to put a young soldier, the first time of appearing, into a full company, and perhaps into a regiment, where he is to undertake some of the most difficult movements in the whole system. This is totally wrong. For while he is unacquainted with the alphabet, you command him to read. To begin thus with a scholar, he would be taught with difficulty, and to little purpose. This must be discouraging to the soldier, and very troublesome to the officer. To remedy this evil, it would be well for the company officers on the days allotted for exercise, to devote a part of the day to the first lesson to be given to the soldier. Each officer, with a small section in one rank, without arms, would communicate more knowledge in one day, than all of them together with the whole company, in three. The soldier is first to be taught how to stand *without* arms, before he attempts to move *with* them. The soldier should never be embarrassed with the care of his musket in his first position or movements. The position of the soldier without arms being attended to; he is next to be taught the facings, to move by the various steps, and to measure the time. After this the position of the soldier with arms. Then the several movements as before. Having thus in the beginning acquired the true attitude, it will never leave him while in the ranks; all his duty is performed with ease; every motion will be graceful; the soldier's air will be

Digitized by Google

perceptible in the execution of every order; without this, or some similar method, the true soldier's air and discipline will never be obtained. It would be folly to expect it. It ought then to be a rule of the captain never to put a soldier into the company for exercise, until he has gone through the two first divisions of the drill, unless it be for the purpose of show and parade at the reviews and inspection. The smallest sectional part of an army, therefore, as already defined, is the first to draw our attention in the detail of this work.

THE DRILL,

OR DISCIPLINE OF THE SOLDIER.

FIRST DIVISION.

"This part," says Scott, "shall be taught as much as possible to recruits singly, to two or three, or at most four, together. In this case they shall be placed in one rank without arms, at the distance of one pace from each other; to prevent their acquiring the habit of spreading out their elbows, or leaning against the men on either side of them."

POSITION OF THE SOLDIER WITHOUT ARMS.

14. The heels on the same line as near each other as the conformation of the man will admit; the toes turned out so as to occupy a little more than

Digitized by Google

three fifths of a semi-circle, which would be described by turning the feet on the heels to the right and left. The knees strait, but not stiff; the body perpendicular, and the weight resting more hardly on the balls of the feet than the heels; the arms hanging down naturally and fully extended, and close to the body, the palm of the hands turned a little to the front, the elbows not separated from the body; the little fingers touching the seam of the pantaloons; the head well up, without being constrained; the chin a little drawn in, the breast projecting to the front; and the eyes fixed on the ground at the distance of fifteen paces to the front.

NOTE.—The first word of command, in all cases, after the soldier appears on the line is—

Attention.

When he will instantly assume the position above described.

The instructor will then teach the motions of the head by giving the words of command which follow.

Eyes right.

15. On hearing the last word, the soldier turns his head with an easy and equal motion to the right, without moving the body; so that a line dropped from the left side of the nose would pass down the centre of the body; his eyes being fixed in the line of the rank he stands in.

Eyes left.

16. The motion of eyes left, will be executed by inverse means.

Digitized by Google

Front.

17. On hearing this word of command, the soldier resumes first position.

Rest.

18. On hearing this word the soldier will step back with the right foot about six inches to the rear, resting the weight of the body principally on the right leg, and bending the left knee; he will join the hands before the body, keeping the eyes to the front. To make him resume his position the word is given—

Attention.

19. At this word the soldier resumes the prescribed position and steadiness.

NOTE.—Turning the head to the right and left will be found necessary in all wheelings and dressings. It is to be observed as a general rule, that the first position is the one to be resumed after an order is completed.

Right—Face. One motion.

20. On hearing the last word he turns on his left heel, a. d at the same instant brings back his right foot and places it parallel with the left, describing one quarter of a circle to the right.

Left—Face. One motion.

21. Raise the right foot and left toe, resting the weight of the body on the left heel, and describe a

Digitized by Google

quarter circle to the left, bringing forward the right foot, placing it on a line with the left.

Right about—Face. Two motions.

22. 1. At the word *about*, the soldier makes a half face to the right, by stepping back the right foot in rear of the left heel, the centre of the foot touching the heel, and turning on the left heel so that the toe point directly to the front, and the right pointing along the line to the right; if under arms, lay hold on the cartridge-box with the right hand.

2. At the word *face*, he raises the toes, and turns on both heels half round to the rear; he then raises the right foot and carries it back even with the left, and completes the facing.

REMARKS.

In the War Regulations, it is directed that the facings to the right and left about, be done in two motions; but it is there ordered that the right foot be placed three inches in rear of the left heel, then turn on both heels, as here described. But I have found much difficulty in performing it in this way. The weight of the body being borne equally on both feet, and being obliged to swing back the right foot at the time of facing; it is found to be extremely difficult to balance the body on the left heel, while the feet are at such a distance. And furthermore, it is not necessary that the right foot should be at any distance from the left, as it is to be carried to the rear at the time of facing; of course it cannot be in the way of the left.

Left about—Face. Two motions.

23. 1. Observe the same rules as when facing to the right about, except you step forward the right foot instead of stepping to the rear, and plant the

Digitized by Google

heel in the hollow of the left; the feet in the first motion at right angles, the left toe pointing to the left, and the right to the front.

The soldier is next to be taught the various steps, *viz.*

1. The common step.
2. Back step.
3. Oblique step.
4. Side step.
5. Lock step.
6. Time step.
7. Balance step.

These several steps are all useful in the movements hereafter to be practised; and they are severally regulated by the different kinds of *time*, except the balance step. These *steps* are to be taught in the following manner:

COMMON STEP, OR MARCH TO THE FRONT.

Forward—March.

24. At the word *march*, the soldier steps off with his left foot 28 inches, placing it flat on the ground, and be sure not to touch the ground with the foot that is raised, until it reaches the place where it is to be planted down. The right foot is then raised and moved in the same manner, at the rate of 75 in a minute, and continued alternately and regularly, until the officer commands—

Halt.

25. At this word, the step which the soldier may have begun is completed; the other foot brought up by its side, and the first position resumed.

BACK STEP.

Backward—March.

26. At the word *march*, the soldier carries back the left foot directly to the rear, and plants it 14

Digitized by Google

inches from the other. The body (as in all the other steps) kept square to the front, and erect. On hearing the word *halt*, the soldier places the foot (which is then raised) at the proper distance, and brings the other back by the side of it.

All the steps in the drill are to be performed in common time.

OBLIQUE STEP.

While on the march the officer orders—

To the right oblique—March.

27. At the word *march*, (which should be given as the left foot strikes the ground) the soldier will place his right foot so far to the right as to gain to the right about three-fourths of a full pace. The left foot is then placed directly in front of the right, about three-fourths of a full pace to the front. The word then ought to be given—Right—Left; with so much of a pause between as to give the soldier time to get fixed in his position. When the ground to the right flank is gained, according to the design of the officer, he commands—

Forward—March.

28. At the word *march*, (which should be given when the right foot is down) he resumes the march direct.

To the left oblique—March.

29. This is performed on the same principles.

SIDE STEP.

30. This step may be begun with the right foot, which is not the case with any of the other steps. When the squad is in line the word is given—

Digitized by Google

By the side step to the Right—March.

31. When the right foot is raised and carried directly to the right, about 8 inches, or the distance between the files, preserving the line on which they are placed; the left foot is then brought up to it with as much of a pause as would equal the time of taking a full pace to the front in common time; the head turned to the right. At the word *halt*, resume the first position.

REMARKS.

This step is very important and necessary. It is of use in opening or closing the files, or in moving an entire line a short distance to the right or left.

RULE.

32. When the line is to be moved to the right or left without opening the files, the first file on the leading flank must step no further than the distance between the files; otherwise the files will open, which is not the object. Each file will occupy at each step all the distance between the files, so that when ordered to *halt*, will occupy no more ground than formerly.

33. When files are to be opened by the side step the leading file may step the distance of two feet or more; and each file in succession will be enabled to step the same distance until the line is properly extended, when each file will halt in succession withou the word as they get their true distance.

34. When the divisions or sub-divisions are to be opened from each other, the number of steps may be named, and the private counts for himself, and halts when the steps are finished.

Digitized by Google

LOCK STEP.

This is particularly useful in displaying a column, and in all file-marching. It is not used in the drill until a number of files are formed in a rank; when, being faced to the right or left, the word is given—

Forward—March.

35. When each file will raise his left foot and plant the heel opposite the hollow of the right foot of the file directly before him; then his right foot opposite his file-leader's left, in the same manner; continuing thus whether the step be long or short, until he hears the word *halt*, by which means every soldier will retain his true relative situation, and when faced to the front, will occupy no more ground than will be necessary for the formation of close file, if the march has been correctly performed by the *lock step*.

This step is differently understood from what is here described. Gen. Scott, in the War Regulations, has described it thus: "That at each step the man in rear of another shall plant his foot on the spot left by the man in front of him."—Gen. Maltby describes it thus: "Every man locking, or placing his advanced foot on the ground before (upon) the spot from whence the preceding man had taken his*."

But the author is convinced that neither of these modes is practicable. It must be obvious to every one skilled in file-marching, that to step in the tracks of the file in front, he must wait until they be left by his file-leader, which will cause the line to extend

* This, says Maltby, was taken from *James' Dictionary*.

Digitized by Google

exactly twice its usual length, which is contrary to all military principles whatever.

TIME STEP.

This step is designed to preserve or mark the time, while on the march. It may be necessary to keep the same ground, and preserve the time without gaining or losing ground; as when a front division may have to wait for one of the rear to advance, or when a front division meets with some impediment, the whole must wait for the front to advance; or when it is wished to change the direction of the march, by wheeling about on the centre. Then the officer will command—

Mark Time—March.

36. The word *march* is given when one foot strikes the ground, the other is then flung out to the front so far as to straighten the leg, and without constraint, when it is brought back and placed by the other foot, within the time of making one step, whether in common or quick time. This is alternately continued until the officer gives a second order.

BALANCE STEP.

37. This step is not practised except in the drill. It is executed in the following manner. At the words *Balance step—March*, the left leg is extended and carried forward with a straight knee sufficiently to the front to make a step of 28 inches, the foot level, and suspended from the ground, with the whole weight of the body on the right foot, the attitude of the body the same as in the first position. At the word *one*, from the officer, the foot is swung to the rear as far as practicable, without any motion

Digitized by Google

of the body. Then wait until the officer gives the word *two;* when the foot is carried to the front and planted 28 inches from the other; when that is raised and carried to the front and suspended in the same manner, the weight of the body on the left leg. This is continued alternately, swinging the foot to the front and rear, until the word is given *rest;* when the foot that is raised is planted by the side of the other, and the soldier stands at ease.

REMARKS.

The principal object in this step is to habituate the soldier to march erect, without wavering or jostling, or unnecessary motions, of the body or limbs, and that the step at all times should appear easy, and without great bodily exertion; particularly to have habitually at command the exact balance of the body in all the various steps, and the easy motion or swing of the leg. The soldier is extremely apt to bend the knee too much when marching, which arises in no small degree from the want of practice in this step. Too much care cannot be taken to prevent the soldier from bending the knee when marching. The weight of the body should never be allowed to come upon the foot until the knee is perfectly straight.

In all marchings, the body should move directly to the front as much as possible, without jostling to the right or left, more than to balance the body from one foot to the other.

The first position of the soldier, the various facings and steps, as already pointed out, having been taught and become familiar, he is prepared to receive his musket, to take the same position, and to perform the same movements *with arms.*

Digitized by Google

SECOND DIVISION.

THE POSITION OF THE SOLDIER WITH ARMS, AND THE EXERCISE OF THE MUSKET.

38. The position of the soldier with arms, is similar to that without arms, excepting a small variation as respects the left arm. In the position of shouldered arms, the musket is placed nearly perpendicularly, so that a line dropped from the point of the bayonet would fall even with the left heel; the breech of the piece resting on the left hand, and against the shoulder; the elbow close to the body; the arm extended downward nearly the whole length; the fingers under the butt; the thumb in front; the fore part of the butt even with the front of the thigh; the cartridge box so far back as not to be pressed between the arm and body.

The soldier with arms having practised the various steps and facings, as described in the first division of the drill, he may then be put to the *manual* and *platoon exercise*. The soldiers formed in one rank and [illegible] ended, would be the most eligible situation, as each one might then be seen, and the proper instruction given to each separately.

In the War Regulations, four men are paraded in one rank for this exercise; but this is intended for the regular service. In the militia it will be found necessary to instruct a greater number at a time; but it will be very useful to parade in one rank for the purpose of giving instruction in the musket exercise.

39. "The execution of every word of command shall be in distinct motions," says the War Regulations. In the drill, it will be necessary for the officer to count for the private in performing each motion, that he may have an opportunity to correct every mistake.

Digitized by Google

MANUAL AND PLATOON EXERCISE.

The words for the Manual and Platoon Exercise, are to be given in the following order, and are to be executed and explained as hereafter described.

As the soldier is at all times to come on the ground with ordered arms, the exercise will commence from that position.

Manual Exercise.

Shoulder arms.
Present arms.
Shoulder arms.
Advance arms.
Shoulder arms.
Secure arms.
Shoulder arms.
Fix bayonet.
Support arms.
Carry arms.
Slope arms.
Carry arms.
Port arms.
Charge bayonet.
Shoulder arms.
Charge bayonet.
Shoulder arms.
Trail arms.
Shoulder arms.
Recover arms.
Carry arms.
Unfix bayonet.
Order arms.
Rest.

Platoon Exercise.

Caution. Attention—Platoon Exercise. First division of Firing. Company will prime and load by word of command.

Load arms.
Open pan.
Handle cartridge.
Tear cartridge.
Prime.
Shut pan.
About.
Charge cartridge.
Draw rod.
Ram down cartridge.
Return rod.
Shoulder arms.
Ready—Aim—Fire.
Shoulder arms.

Second division of Firing.

Prime and load.
Shoulder arms.
Ready—Aim—Fire.
Shoulder arms.

Third division of Firing.

Quick Time--Prime & load.
Ready—Aim—Fire.
Shoulder arms.
Order arms.
Stand at ease.

Digitized by Google

The position of the soldier at ordered arms.

41. The right hand sunk down the length of the arm; the breech of the piece even with the toe of the right foot; the thumb in the rear of the barrel, and fingers in front, and extended along the stock, the barrel a little detached from the shoulder, and the piece perpendicular.

Shoulder—Arms. Two motions.

42. Carry the piece with the right hand well to the left side, then throw it to the left shoulder, and receive it with the left hand at the butt, as in the first position, the fingers of the right hand remaining on the piece just above the lock; barrel square to the front.

2. Drop the right hand to the right side without slapping.

Present—Arms. Two motions.

43. 1. With the left hand turn the lock briskly to the front, and detach the piece from the shoulder, at the same time seize it with the right at the small part, just below the cock.

2. Complete the turning inwards of the piece with the right hand, and carry it perpendicularly opposite to the left eye, the ram-rod in front; sink it nearly the length of the right arm, holding the piece at the small stock with the right thumb in rear, while the left holds the piece at the swell, the fore arm square across the body, without stepping the right foot to the rear.

Shoulder—Arms. Two motions.

44. 1. Spring up the musket to the left shoulder,

Digitized by Google

turning the barrel to the front at the same time; drop the left hand and receive the butt in the usual manner; the fingers of the right hand held easy agast inthe small stock.

2. Let fall the right hand briskly to its position.

Advance—Arms. Three motions.

45. 1. As in the first motion of present arms.

2. Carry the piece to the right side, turning the barrel to the rear; receive the piece with the right hand, with the arm extended; the fore-finger and thumb in front, the finger below, and the thumb above the guard; the left hand lying on the piece, with the fore-arm square across the body.

3. Let the left hand fall to its position.

Shoulder—Arms. Three motions.

46. 1. Bring the musket in front of the body, shifting the fingers to the front of the small stock under the guard, and the thumb in rear under the cock; and seize the piece with the left hand in the position of the *present.*

2. Raise the musket to the left shoulder, and drop the left hand to the breech; holding the right hand the same as when shouldering from the *present.*

3. Drop the right hand to its proper place.

Secure—Arms. Two motions.

47. 1. Spring the piece a trifle with the left hand; bring the right hand across the body, seizing the piece at the small part below the lock; raise the left hand, placing it in front of the barrel at the swell, the left elbow flat against the piece, so as to cover the lock, the piece perpendicular.

Digitized by Google

2. Bring the piece to the front with a quick motion of the left hand, throwing back the breech under the left arm, with the right hand; drop the right hand to its proper place at the same time; holding the piece secured under the left arm upon an angle of forty-five degrees to the front; the eyes turned to the right to see that the pieces are in a line. This must be strictly attended to, at all times, when the pieces are brought to a sloped position, such as the *Secure*, the *Trail*, the *Slope*, or the *Charge*.

Shoulder—Arms. Two motions.

48. 1. Throw up the piece with the left hand to the shoulder; seize it at the small stock with the right; the left hand is dropped to the breast.

2. Drop the right hand to the right side.

Fix—Bayonet. Four motions.

49. 1. The first motion of fix bayonet is the same as the first motion of order arms.

2. Extend the left arm on the left side turning the barrel to the rear; and seize the piece with the left hand just above the right, and seize the bayonet with the right hand, draw it, and fix it at the muzzle; the right hand remaining at the shank of the bayonet.

3. Throw the piece directly to the shoulder, with the left hand, dropping it at the same time to the breech; the right hand catching the piece at the swell just above the lock.

4. Drop the right hand by the side.

Support—Arms. Three motions.

50. 1. Bring the right hand across the body, and

Digitized by Google

place the fingers on the small stock four inches below the lock.

2. Quit the piece with the left hand, placing the arm square across the body under the lock, and let the cock rest on the arm.

3. Let the right hand fall to its place.

NOTE.—In the War Regulations, the men, while marching, are allowed to support with one or both arms.

Carry—Arms. Three motions.

51. 1. The fingers of the right hand hold the piece below the left arm.

2. Drop the left hand to the butt.

3. Let the right hand drop to its place.

Slope—Arms. One motion.

52. 1. Drop the muzzle of the piece to the rear on an angle of forty-five degrees; the elbow close to the body, pieces dressed.

While on the march it is not necessary to be so particular as to the position; the object being to rest the arm.

Carry—Arms. Two motions.

53. 1. The piece is brought with a quick motion to the shoulder with left the hand; and the right strikes the piece above the lock to prevent its falling over to the front.

2. Drop the right hand.

Port—Arms.* Two motions.

54. 1. The first motion the same as the first motion to advance.

* This is a motion not to be found in the War Regulations.

Digitized by Google

2. Carry the piece with the right hand across the body in a diagonal position, receive it with the left hand at the swell the height of the left breast, the lock in front of the right hip, muzzle to the left six inches in front of a left line.

NOTE.—This motion is esteemed as very useful by the British troops, and is universally practised by them, especially as a preparatory motion to the charge with the bayonet. Troops advancing to the charge would move more easily and rapidly with arms at the *port*, than when brought fully to the charge.

Charge—Bayonet. One motion.

55. Half face to the right, by turning on the left heel and place the right foot square behind the left, the hollow of the foot against the heel, and bring the piece to the charge with the lock just above the hip, and the point of the bayonet the height of the eyes.

NOTE.—While standing in a line, the men half face to the right in the charge; but when marching, the body must be kept square to the front, and the men in the rear rank be careful not to hit the men in the front rank with their bayonets.

Shoulder—Arms. Two motions.

56. 1. The piece is carried with the right hand to the shoulder, and the left receives it at the butt; at the same time face to the front.

2. Drop the right hand.

Charge—Bayonet. (From the shoulder.) Two motions.

Digitized by Google

57. 1. Seize the piece with the right hand at the small stock, the same as the first motion of *present.*

2. The same as from the *port.*

Shoulder—Arms. Two motions.

The same as before.

Trail—Arms. Two motions.

58. 1. Sink down the musket to the full extent of the left arm, seizing it at the same time with the right hand the height of the left shoulder.

2. Extend the right arm the right side, the breech sloped to the rear, but not so as to touch the ground.

Shoulder—Arms. Two motions.

59. 1. Throw the breech to the front until the piece is perpendicular, then bring it to the shoulder, the same as from the *order.*

2. Drop the right hand.

Recover—Arms. One motion.

60. Turn the piece with the left hand, the barrel to the rear, and throw it in front of the body, catch the piece with the right hand at the small stock; the left above the lock, the little finger resting on the feather-spring, the fore-finger the height of the chin; the piece directly in front of the centre of the body; the right thumb upon the cock, and the fingers under the guard, the elbow raised.

Carry—Arms. Two motions.

61. 1. Turn the piece with the right hand and carry it to the shoulder, and drop the left hand to the breech.

2. Drop the right hand.

Unfix—Bayonet. Four motions.

62. The same as fix bayonet, except in the se-

Digitized by Google

cond motion, when the bayonet is disengaged from the piece and returned, and pause with the hand on the socket of the bayonet; it is then shouldered the same as before.

Order—Arms. Two motions.

63. 1. Seizing the piece, the fore-finger the height of the shoulder immediately.

2. Carry the piece to the right side wtih a full extended arm; bring the left hand across the body, and strike the piece up to the right shoulder; the breech of the piece four inches from the ground.

NOTE.—This motion I have varied, by bringing up the left hand to keep the piece perpendicular. This improvement is so important and so obvious, that it needs no comment.

Rest. One motion.

64. Step back the right foot 8 inches to the rear, bend the left knee, and let the piece drop back on the right shoulder, the hands joined together in front of the body.

PLATOON EXERCISE.

Attention.

65. At this word the soldier steps immediately up with the right foot, and resumes the position of ordered arms.

Shoulder—Arms.

Performed as before.

Digitized by Google

(Caution.) Platoon Exercise.

First Division of Firing.

Company will prime and load by word of command.

Load—Arms. Two motions.

66. 1. Turn the piece, the lock partly to the front with the left hand; seize the small of the stock with the right; the piece a little detached from the shoulder.

2. Half face to the right by turning on both heels, right toe pointing to the right, the left toe pointing to the front; and at the same time sink the musket into a slanting position with the right hand, the left meeting and seizing it at the swell; the lock just above the hip; the top of the barrel as high as the eyes; the thumb against the hammer; and wait in that position for the next word of command.

Open—Pan. One motion.

67. Throw open the pan with the thumb, holding the piece firmly in the left hand; drop the right hand to the cartridge box, (passing the hand between the butt and body,) and open it.

Handle—Cartridge. One motion.

68. Take the cartridge from the box, carry it to the mouth, and wait for the next word.

Tear—Cartridge. One motion.

69. Apply the teeth, and twist off the end of the cartridge; slip the thumb over the powder; carry the hand to the pan, keeping the cartridge perpendicular; the elbow against the butt.

Digitized by Google

Prime. One motion.

70. Turn the eyes for a moment on the pan; fill the pan with powder; and cover the cartridge again with the thumb; place the three last fingers behind the pan-cover; raise the eyes to the front.

Shut—Pan. One motion.

71. Hold the piece firm with the left hand; shut the pan with the right; bring the right hand to the small stock, the three last fingers round it.

About. Two motions.

72. 1. Turn on the left heel to the front, the left toe to the left, the right heel in the hollow of the left foot, the toe to the front; carry the piece with both hands to the position of the shoulder.

2. Let go the right hand; sink the piece to the ground with the left, the right at the same moment brought to the muzzle; the breech of the piece dressed with the left toe, directly to the rear; the piece crossing the left thigh; the muzzle in front of the body, and left arm extended.

Charge—Cartridge. One motion.

73. Raise the elbow, and enter the cartridge into the muzzle; shake the powder into the barrel; seize the butt of the ramrod with the thumb and fore-finger, the elbow down; turn the barrel to the left.

Draw—Rod. Two motions.

74. 1. Extend the arm at full length upwards; draw and seize the ramrod in the middle back-handed.

2. Draw it from the pipe, turn it on the centre, between the body and the bayonet with the arm ex-

Digitized by Google

tended; enter the butt into the barrel as far as the hand; let the lock turn again to the left.

Ram down—Cartridge. One motion.

75. Slip up the hand to the small end of the ramrod, the arm at full length, drive the cartridge forcibly into the barrel, two or three strokes; take it again by the small end, between the thumb and forefinger.

Return—Rod. Two motions.

76. 1. Extend the arm, as in the first motion to draw; slip the hand down to the muzzle; with a quick motion seize the ramrod at the centre, between the thumb and finger, the thumb in front, and finger in rear of the rod.

2. Draw it out, enter it at the pipes; thrust it down to its place; the lower edge of the hand on the top.

Shoulder—Arms. Three motions.

77. 1. Carry the piece to the shoulder with the left hand; turning on the left heel at the same time to the front, and carry back the right foot to the side of the left; seize the piece with the right hand at the small stock.

2. Drop the left hand to the butt.

3. Let the right hand fall to the right side.

Ready. Two motions.

78. 1. Bring the piece to the *recover.*

2. Raise the right elbow, and place the right thumb on the cock; cock the piece by bringing down the elbow, and drop the hand to the small stock; the piece perpendicular.

Digitized by Google

Aim. One motion.

79. Bring down the piece, the muzzle little below a level; the butt firmly against the shoulder; the left hand at the swell, the right behind the lock, the fore-finger on the trigger; half face to the right on the left heel; slip the right foot back six inches in rear of the left; bring the head down to the piece, and aim well; the rear rank step eight inches to the right, and six to the rear.

Fire. One motion.

80. Pull the trigger instantly; raise the head; replace the right foot; drop the piece to the priming position, with the thumb and knuckle of the fore-finger on the cock, ready to half-cock at the word to *load*, or *shoulder*.

REMARKS.

The next word of command depends on the situation of the men or the object to be accomplished. If the company are firing for the purpose of a salute, it will be proper to fire three times in the same way; in which case, the word of command will be *Half-Cock—Arms*, then *Handle—Cartridge*, and perform the motions as before, waiting for each word of command. But if the company are performing it by way of exercise, the word is given, *Shoulder—Arms*, with so much of a pause between the words, that the men may have an opportunity to half-cock their pieces and shut pan; and at the word, *Arms*, they bring the pieces to the shoulder together. They should then be put through with the second and third divisions; which are hereafter described. Every word of command ought to be deliberately given, and a pause of nearly two seconds between the se-

Digitized by Google

veral words in the Manual and Platoon Exercise. In going through with the firing, it is impossible that the soldier should perform them correctly, unless the words are well timed, and suitable pauses made. The officer must be habituated to an exact measure of the time; and, then, even if the words should not be perfectly distinct, the habit of the soldiers would enable them to fire exact.

The piece being at the shoulder, the caution is given—

Second Division of Firing.

Prime—and—Load. Two motions.

81. 1. Seize the piece as in the first division of loading; there make a pause of one second.

2. Half face to the right on both heels, and drop the piece to the priming position; open the pan as before; and perform all the motions the same as in the first division, without waiting for the word. The motions must be performed with care and deliberation; and pause with the lower edge of the hand on the butt of the ramrod. The pieces are then brought to the shoulder by order.

The words are then given—

Ready—Aim—Fire.

The same as before; and the motions performed the same, and the pieces brought to the priming position.

Shoulder—Arms.

When the private will half-cock his piece, and shut pan as before, and come to the shoulder. The caution is then given—

Digitized by Google

Third Division of Firing.

Quick time. Prime and Load. One motion.

82. As soon as the men hear the word *Load*, they will throw the muzzle of the piece to the front by carrying the breech to the rear, and turn it with the left hand, so as to fetch the barrel up; catch the piece at the swell with the left hand under the left arm, holding the piece horizontally. The pan is then opened with the right hand; then *Handle Cartridge*, *Tear Cartridge*, *Prime*, and *Shut Pan*, as before; then drop the breech of the piece to the front, and hold the piece perpendicular with the left hand, directly in front of the body without touching the ground; the barrel to the rear; then enter the cartridge with the right hand, and jar it down with the left by giving the piece two or three strokes upon the ground, still holding the piece in the left hand, the breech on the ground directly in front of the left toe; the left hand the height of the elbow; the right hand by the side.

Ready.

83. At the word *ready*, the piece is brought to the *recover* with the left hand, and cocked with the right. Hold the piece in that position waiting for the next word of command.

Aim—and—Fire.

As before.

Shoulder—Arms.

As before.

The pieces are then brought to the order, and the men directed to stand at ease.

Digitized by Google

Stand at ease.

84. At this word the soldier stands in any position he may choose without leaving his place; he may be allowed to move his hands and his feet, and rest himself as much as possible, without leaving the line.

REMARKS.

I have divided the Platoon Exercise into three classes or divisions; the first and second are the same as practised in the regular service; the third is new to troops in this country; the *French*, I am told, frequently practise it in action. I have taught it to various bodies of troops for a number of years; and do find that it facilitates loading extremely. I have frequently seen companies perform it regularly five times in a minute, and wait for the regular words of command. And I have even seen a person load and fire in this way sixteen times in sixty seconds.

How great then must be the advantage of disciplining troops in this mode of firing? It would be at least as five to one while standing in the field.

This lesson may be concluded by habituating the soldier in firing obliquely to the right and left, and in three ranks, and while kneeling.

Here let it be remarked, that the soldier ought never to begin wrong as to the manner of levelling his piece. To obtain the habit of the true position of the musket in the firing, is of much consequence, especially as it regards *taking aim*. The habit which is obtained in many places, of elevating, or rather raising the muzzle of the musket, is so unsoldierlike, and contrary to every principle of discipline, that an officer or soldier, after reflecting, will not retain

Digitized by Google

it; as it destroys the whole object of using powder for instruction. It is not only lost but worse than lost; as the bad habit once fixed, is difficult to root out. It is easier to learn two men than unlearn one.

THE OBLIQUE FIRINGS.

FIRING TO THE RIGHT WHEN IN TWO RANKS.

85. At the word *Ready*, both ranks perform as in the case of a direct fire. At the word *Aim*, the men of the front rank, step back with the right foot the same as in the direct firings, except the right foot carried a little more to the left; the piece brought down on an angle of forty-five degrees to the right. The rear rank man steps forward with the left foot a little to the right, and turns on the right heel; the right toe pointing to the right; the piece brought down on the same angle with the front rank on the right of their file-leader. At the word *Fire*, both ranks fire, and come to the priming position, the same as from the direct firing.

FIRING TO THE LEFT WHEN IN TWO RANKS.

86. At the word *Ready*, both ranks perform as in the direct fire. At the word *Aim*, the front rank direct their pieces to the left, the same as before to the right, without moving the feet. The rear rank advance the left foot about six inches, and aim through the opening to the left of their file-leaders. After firing, come to the usual position of priming.

FIRING WHILE IN THREE RANKS.

87. Firing in three ranks may be practised either by independent file-firing, or as in the second division. If as the second division, the piece being loaded, the word is given—

Digitized by Google

Front Rank—Ready.

Aim—Fire.

Load.

Centre Rank—Ready.

Aim—Fire.

The centre rank men having fired; with their right hand pass their pieces to the rear rank men by facing to the right; the rear rank receive the pieces of the front rank with the left hand, and pass their pieces to the front rank with their right hand, who receive them with their left hand, and face to the front, and bring their pieces to the shoulder. The word is then given again to the centre rank—

Centre Rank—

Ready—Aim—Fire. Load.

88. The order is then immediately given to the front rank to *Fire* again*; so that the firing will be incessant; the centre rank always fire twice with the same pieces before they return them to the rear rank, except the first time. The men in the rear rank hand their pieces to the centre rank without cocking. When the firing ceases, each man must be careful that he has his own piece.—Independent file-firing is performed in the same way, but without waiting for the word. The centre rank take their station in rear of the intervals of the front rank, on the right of their file-leader, where they remain until the firing ceases; when they resume their proper places in the line.

* In this mode of firing, the pieces, after being loaded are brought to the shoulder without the word.

Digitized by Google

TO FIRE WHILE KNEELING.

The men being formed in three ranks, to resist cavalry, or any other attack, the front rank may be ordered to kneel, and load and fire by independent files, in the following manner; at the word,

Front rank—On your right—Kneel.

89. When the men of the front rank will step to the front with the left foot, so far as to have the left leg form a right angle when kneeled; that is, the leg, from the foot to the knee, perpendicular, and the thigh horizontal; at the same time drop on the right knee; the body and right thigh erect.

Commence—Firing.

90. When each file will discharge his piece independent of the other; and load again as quick as possible; the front rank in the following manner: after the piece is discharged, it is brought to the priming position and primed as usual; the piece is then carried to the left side with the left hand and slid to the rear, so as to fetch the muzzle of the piece even with the left knee, the barrel close to the left thigh; the cartridge is then entered with the right hand and rammed down, and the loading completed; the piece is carried with the left hand to the position of recover and cocked as usual. Thus continue until ordered to cease firing. The order is then given, *Front rank—Up.*

The soldier having attended to the various steps, by which all future movements are to be performed, and the different facings, and the different exercise of the musket; it is thought best to form them in company, before we proceed to instruct them in the different movements.

Digitized by Google

MILITIA TACTICS.

PART II.

CONTAINS THE MODE OF FORMING COMPANY, POSITION OF OFFICERS, THE DIFFERENT MOVEMENTS OF A COMPANY, AND THE MANUAL EXERCISE OF OFFICERS AND NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS.

Ranking and sizing, and forming the men in two ranks.

As so much depends on the manner by which you commence the instruction of the company; and as I am sensible that many non-commissioned officers are ignorant of this part of their duty; having no other knowledge than what they obtain from books; I shall be more particular on this head, than some, perhaps, would think it necessary.

No. 1. It will first be the duty of the commanding officer, on days of exercise, to ascertain if there be a complement of non-commissioned officers present, if not, he will launch others to fill their vacancies for the day. He then orders one of the sergeants to parade the company in two ranks, with the tallest on the right and left of each rank, and in the rear.

This duty is commonly put to the first sergeant, but the captain should make them take turns, that all may understand it. The company is then paraded in the following manner:

2. The sergeant will order the music to beat the long roll on parade, when the men will form on the left of the music, with the tallest on the right in one rank, in succession to the left. The other non-com-

Digitized by Google

missioned officers in front to assist when called on. The sergeant then gives the order—

Attention.

3. Number yourselves into first and second divisions—commencing on the right. When the first file will say first, the second, second, the third, first, the fourth, second, continuing first, second, through the line to the left flank. The officer then commands—

Divisions—

To the right and left—Face.

At the word *face*, the first division will face to the right, and second to the left; that is, those who number *first*, will face to the right, and those who number *second*, to the left. The order is then given—

One side step to the left—March.

4. At the word *march*, each file will step one step to the left and halt, which will open the divisions sufficiently for them to pass each other in line. It will then be ordered—

Company to the right and left size—March.

5. The sergeant will have previously posted an officer on the left flank of the second division, to lead them into line, and as soon as the word is given *march*, the first division will close up to the first file in front, who does not move from his ground; the second division turn by files to the right-about and form a line with the first division. But the officer must be careful that the men do not close so close that they cannot face without crowding each other out of place. The officer that leads the second division will step to the front as soon as he has led them into line.

6. It is not customary nor necessary that the mu-

Digitized by Google

sic should play when the men are ordered to march, to form company; of course, each one will halt when he is within proper distance of the file in front. But should the music be on the ground and ordered to play, each file will mark time after closing, until the word *halt*, is given. When the line is formed, and the men halted the word is given—

Front—Face.

7. The tallest will then be on the flanks, and the shortest in the centre.

The sergeant will then divide each division into two equal parts. He then gives the order—

First and fourth division—Form rear rank—March.

8. At the word *rank*, the divisions named, face to the centre; that is, the first division or sub-division on the right will face to the left; and the fourth division or sub-division on the left will face to the right; and at the word *march*, they move to the centre in rear of the other sub-divisions, and halt without the word; they are then fronted by order. The tallest will then compose the rear; and the shortest the front rank.

9. The company are now formed in two ranks, and in two platoons, without any further counting; of course, two men become a file, and one man a half file. We will now dispose of odd files or half files, should they happen.—It must be kept in mind that the officers are not to be posted until the company are formed as above.

10. Should there be an odd file when the platoons are divided, you will leave one file the most in the first platoon; or should there be a file and a half wanting, you will leave the first man on the left of the first platoon in the front rank, without a cover; but should there be but half a file wanting, you will

Digitized by Google

leave the first man on the left of the second platoon in the front rank, without a cover.

The officers are then posted as follows:

The first sergeant on the right of the company, front rank; the second on the left of the company, front rank; the third two paces in rear of the centre of the first platoon; the fourth two paces in rear of the centre of the second platoon as file closers; the four corporals according to height, on the right of the two platoons covering each other.

When the captain takes command, his post will be three paces in front of the right of his company; the lieutenant three paces in front of the left, and the ensign three paces in front of the centre of the company. It is to be remembered that this position refers only to a company on days of exercise, while in a line, and for drill. For their position while on the march, and by regiment, see *Table for the position of Officers*, page 56, which is the same in both cases, except the captain on days of exercise has no particular station assigned him.

REMARKS.

This mode of forming company, you will perceive, is different from that practised in the army; and with all due deference to that system, I will notice the impropriety of adopting it in the militia. The mode practised in the army is this; the men form in one rank indiscriminately at ordered arms. The sergeant then gives the order, *Right face—Rank and size—March.* The men then size themselves, with the tallest on the right; they then proceed to count them into two divisions, and form them in two ranks; then divide them into platoons, and countermarch and form company. The last part of this movement is a correct one, and I have no other objection to it, but its intricacy; which will be a se-

Digitized by Google

rious one in the militia, when there is no benefit resulting from it. But there may be another objection to this part of the movement. It is allowed in the War Regulations, that the men should be drilled in one rank; and as I have before observed, one rank being the best position for giving instruction, it might be proper to form first in that order. But in the War Regulations, they are not formed in one rank, excepting in the first instance, when the tallest are on the right, and the company cannot be said to be formed.

But this is not the most important objection to this mode of forming company; the greatest evil is the loss of time occasioned by forming indiscriminately in one rank. In the regular service, where the men are all on the ground, and ready to form a line at the instant the word is given, there is not this loss of time. But in the militia, where the men arrive on parade in succession, this loss of time is unavoidable; while the line are thus forming indiscriminately, they might be ranked and sized, and countermarched, and the formation completed.

As soon as the company are paraded, the sergeant will notify the captain that they are ready for command; if the captain is not on parade, the sergeant will detach an officer to give him notice, that he may arrive on the ground by the time the company are paraded. But it would be well if the captain, and the other officers, would be present through the formations, to correct all mistakes that may happen. It has formerly been the practice for the sergeant to take the music and wait on the officers to the parade; but it has of late grown out of fashion, and I think very justly; for I consider time lost, and worse than lost; it had much better be spent in the duties of the day.

11. When the captain takes command, the ser-

Digitized by Google

geant who paraded the company will take post on the right of the company, if it be the first sergeant. The law in the State of Connecticut at this time is, that the troops be inspected the first Monday in May of each year. The first duty, therefore, to be performed on those days, is, to call the roll, then inspect the arms and equipments minutely, and note all deficiencies; then read the law; and complete the official duties of the day; after which the company will proceed to exercise.

Here let it be remarked, that if the company are to drill in the use of the musket, they should be divided into as many squads as there are officers to command, and each one exercise his own squad according to prescribed rules.

Digitized by Google

A TABLE,

Exhibiting at one view the situation of each Officer in the Company and Regiment, in all the various situations in which they may be called to act.

Officers.	*A Regiment in line, in battle order.*	*In line—close order previous to exercise.*	*In line at open order.*	*Open column of sections--right in front.*	*Open column of platoons—right in front.*	*Open column of companies—right in front.*
Colonel.	Twenty paces in rear of the centre of the battalion.	Twenty paces in front of the centre of the battalion, facing them.	The same.	The colonel has no fixed station, but generally in front of the column.	The same.	The same.
Lt. Colonel.	Ten paces in rear of the centre of the right wing.	Ten paces in front of the centre of right wing, facing them.	The same.	Left flank centre of the right wing.	The same.	The same.
Major.	Ten paces in rear of the centre of the left wing.	Ten paces in front of the centre of left wing, facing them.	The same.	Left flank centre of the left wing.	The same.	The same.
Adjutant.	On the colonel's left, horse's length to the rear.	On the left in a line with the front rank.	The same.	Left flank of the rear section.	Left flank of the rear platoon.	Left flank of the rear company.
Captain.	On the right of his company, front rank.	The same.	Three paces in front of the right of his company.	In front of the first section.	In front of the first platoon.	On the left of his company—front rank.

Digitized by Google

Lieutenant.	Two paces in rear of the centre of the second platoon.	On the left of the company—front rank.	Three paces in front of the left of the company.	In front of the third section.	In front of the second platoon.	On the right of the company—front rank.
Ensign.	Two paces in rear of the first platoon.	In centre of the company---front rank.	Three paces in front of the centre of the company.	Between the second and third sections.	Between the two platoons.	In centre of the company---front rank.
1st Sergeant.	In the rear rank, covering the captain.	The same.	On the right of the company—front rank.	On the left of the second section--front rank.	On the left of the first platoon, —front rank.	On the left of his company—rear rank.
2d Sergeant.	In rear of the left of the second platoon.	In rear of the lieutenant, covering him.	On the left of the company—front rank.	On the left of the fourth section—front rank.	On the left of the second platoon–front rank.	On the right of the company—covering the lieutenant.

3d Sergeant.—The third sergeant, unless he is detached for the colours, or for a marker, is a supernumerary officer, and is always to remain two paces in rear of the first section.

4th Sergeant.—The fourth sergeant is likewise a supernumerary officer, unless detached on other duty, and is always to remain in rear of the fourth section

Corporals.—Stationed on the right of each platoon, according to height, covering each other, unless detached as markers.

Staff-Officers.—When mounted, on the right in line of the front rank. In rear of the column when marching.

Digitized by Google

DRESSING.

12. To give the company a correct habit of dressing in line, which will be extremely useful in the battalion, they will now be taught the principles in the following manner. The officer having ordered one file on the right to advance two paces for the point of *appui*, and having posted an officer on the left for the point of *formation*, gives the word—

By files—From the right—Forward—Dress—March.

13. The files move forward at the word, in succession, and dress by the first file; the officer on the left must see that they dress correctly, and caution them if he sees they advance too far, or stop short. The men in dressing will be careful to stop a little short of the line, and immediately dress up by the men already formed. The rule generally adopted for dressing, is, to advance until you can see the third man's breast on that flank by which you dress; this however cannot be an exact rule; there being so much difference in the size of men, and the projection of the breast; and what is still worse, so much unsteadiness in the line, that it is extremely difficult to dress by that rule. I have found it very advantageous in dressing, to cast the eyes on the feet, and advance or retire until the toes are in a line, which can be ascertained at a glance, even should the body be wavering. The men in the rear rank will close within one pace of the front rank; each one will be careful to halt directly in rear of his file-leader, and dress not only with his own rank, but the man in front of him. Dressing by the left forward, or on the right or left backwards, is executed on similar principles; except in dressing to the rear, the men will step a little past the line, and then dress up. The company may then be taught to

Digitized by Google

dress forward, by bringing forward two or more files, and dressing them by the point of formation, then bring forward the remainder by sections or files. As dressing is so important, it cannot be too strictly attended to.

OF WHEELING.

14. What is understood by a full wheel, is a quarter of a circle; and to the right or left about, is half a circle; so that when a company is ordered to wheel, the wheeling flank perform a quarter of a circle.

TO WHEEL INTO OPEN COLUMN OF PLATOONS.

On the left of Platoons—Backward wheel—March.

15. When the word is given *wheel*, each man looks to the right, except the man on the right, who looks to the left; and as soon as the word is given *march*, the men on the wheeling flank step back with as long a step as convenient, and each one feel easy to the pivot flank; the rear rank incline to the left so as each to cover his file-leader; and each one must look to the right to see that he does not wheel away from the man next to him on the wheeling flank. For a further explanation of wheeling, see Part I. No. 11. Observe to halt as soon as the wheel is completed without waiting for the word.

REMARKS.

This kind of wheeling is esteemed useful; it has many advantages; but the principal benefit resulting from wheeling backward, (and which is an important one,) is to retain the dress of the left flank of the column, which is to govern on the march. If the line break into column by wheeling to the right, then the right will be in a line; and then if there be

Digitized by Google

odd files in the platoons, as there generally is, they must oblique to the right and left until they get the left dressed. This must consume time, and cause unnecessary movements. The French remedy this evil by filing into column from the left to the front; but this is unsafe with undisciplined troops.

The position of officers as described in page 56, you will perceive, is different from what is practised in the militia at present; but it is the same as practised in the army at this time, (and established by the War Regulations,) except a trifling variation in consequence of a less number. In the army, they have four subaltern officers, and five sergeants. In the War Regulations, the sergeants are called guides; the first sergeant is guide of the right of the company, and the second, guide of the left, when in line. When the company are in column, the first and second sergeants are on the commanding flank without a cover; the remainder in rear. The corporals on the right of platoons. The captain and lieutenant are called chief of platoons; the captain, on company days, has no particular station; but should be at all times where he can best witness the correctness of the movements. The lieutenant's post is in front of the second platoon, from which he occasionally may move to the right and left flank, or in rear, and see that each officer and private performs his duty correctly. When there is a superior officer to take command, the captain and lieutenant are to remain in front of the first and second platoons when in column; and are answerable for the regular conduct of the non-commissioned officers and privates of their respective platoons.

In a former Treatise on this subject, I have laid it down as a rule for the officer commanding a platoon (or the guide) at all times to be on the commanding flank; and not knowing at that time that

Digitized by Google

this was the mode practised in the army; and being convinced that a change in the position of officers was necessary, I urged, at considerable length, the use and propriety of this mode. But it will not be necessary at this time to say more than that this is now established by law.

OF THE POINTS OF DRESSING.

16. When a company stand in a line, they must always dress by the right; but as soon as they are wheeled into column with the right in front, they will dress by the left, and feel that way; except when wheeling, then each man feels to the pivot flank and looks to the wheeling flank, except the man on the wheeling flank; and as soon as the wheel is completed, each man feels and dresses again to the commanding flank. This by all military writers, is the established rule of dressing, and in theory it appears to be correct, but in practice it is not. I have found by experience that men will wheel more accurately by dressing to the *pivot* flank; but as this appears incorrect in theory, I have omitted to insert it as a rule, but my long experience teaches me that it should be adopted in the drill.

Here let it be remarked, as a rule established by all authors, that the left of the column is the governing flank when the right is in front; and the right when the left is front.

When a company march to the front in line, or in a larger body than platoons or sub-divisions, they must dress by the centre. Companies frequently parade in one rank for the purpose of exercise and movements, and divide into four sub-divisions, and on the march are ordered to form divisions, when they will double the sub-divisions and dress by the centre. In this way there will be no more difficulty

Digitized by Google

in dressing a division than a sub-division. It is very obvious that when the company are marching by divisions, and files being extended, should they be ordered to close to either flank, it must consume more time and cause more confusion, than closing to the centre. Here again let it be remarked, that the flank or point to which you are ordered to close or feel, is the dressing point. It is necessary for every officer to understand, at all times, which is the governing and dressing flank; and he will often find it necessary to caution the men in this respect, as it is the only possible way of marching correctly.

MOVING TO THE FRONT.

17. The commanding officer, previous to moving to the front, should take a station where he may be heard by the whole column, (then give the caution to the music, that they may be ready to play as soon as the word is given *march*,) then give the word *forward march*, with a voice in proportion to the number of men he has in command; when each man in the column will step off with the left foot, the distance of 28 inches the first step, without waiting for the music. If the music understand their duty, as they ought, they will step at the same time with the column, and commence their tune when the left foot strikes the ground. It must at all times be remembered, that when the word is given *march*, without any qualified word to denote the kind of time, it is to be common time only.

It is customary in the militia in this State, as well as most other places, for officers to give the word *mark time*, previous to moving to the front. This is so unmilitary and improper, that I shall be somewhat particular in pointing out the objections. First, it is contrary to all military systems whatever,

Digitized by Google

and many evils are the result. Officers are very particular to give the word *mark time*, so that all may hear, when the music are to commence playing. The officer then moves to the front of the column, and makes a motion to the music to move to the front, and as the first platoon discovers that the music have commenced the march, they move after them; so each platoon in succession, as they see the platoon in front leaving them, commence their march. In this way the front platoon of a battalion will have gained 200 yards to the front before the rear platoon leaves the ground. This I have frequently witnessed; and if ordered to halt, in this situation, they must halt in succession, as they marched; or when wheeled into line they will occupy almost twice their usual length; or if the march is continued to any considerable distance, they soon discover that they have more than wheeling distance, to gain which they not unfrequently huddle together, to perhaps half wheeling distance; to remedy this evil, and correct their distance, it would require an extensive field. But it is said by some, that the word *march*, should be given after *mark time*, so that all may hear, and move off together. This I conceive to be difficult, if not impossible; for when the word is given *mark time*, the music begin to play, and it is not to be expected, if practicable, that the voice can be heard above twenty or thirty musicians. But admitting it could, I can see no benefit resulting from marking time. But it is said, in its justification, that the object is, that the men may get the step previous to moving to the front. I would ask, is it easier for men to get the step standing, than moving to the front? I answer, I know it is not so easy. I have seen the best disciplined companies in the State, after marking time on the ground, compelled to shift their step

Digitized by Google

as soon as they move to the front, in order to get the step with the music. The fact is, this mistake grew out of inattention or ignorance of the musicians. It is frequently the case that the music are not ready to play until they have marched a considerable distance to the front; it has therefore been the practice to give the word *mark time*, to give the music opportunity to select a tune, and commence playing.

This leads me again to remark, that the music should be well trained in all parts of their duty, and the different movements of the company, that they may at all times be ready to commence playing, or perform any movement at the word *march*.

OF WHEELING DISTANCE.

18. It is of the utmost importance that a column, on the march, keep exact wheeling distance, unless ordered to open or close; and it is a general evil, that companies extend their column too far, instead of closing. The corporals on the right are to be answerable for the wheeling distance, and they must calculate their distance from the front rank of the platoon in front, instead of the rear rank. The sergeants are to be accountable for the correct dressing and regular step of the platoon.

OF THE MARCH IN COLUMN.

19. When the company are wheeled into column to march, the captain will order one of the supernumerary officers, the third or fourth sergeant, to take post in front of the music, to regulate their movements. This I have found to be of essential service. The sergeant should be well versed in marching, and all the different steps, and attend that the music do not get too much advanced, and that they

Digitized by Google

march directly to the front; and when wheeling, that they make right angles, where the ground and circumstances will admit; and likewise to attend to the signals of the captain, to mark time, or wheel to the right or left.

When these preparations are made, the captain gives the word—

Forward—March.

20. When each man will move to the front with a step of 28 inches, feeling and dressing to the left; and the music commence playing when the left foot strikes the ground; and continues thus until the next word of command.

TO CHANGE THE DIRECTION OF MARCH TO THE RIGHT FLANK WHILE ON THE MARCH IN COLUMN.

To the right—Wheel.

21. It is a general rule, not to commence any movement until you hear the word *march;* the principal object of this is, that the movement may be commenced by the whole column at the same time. In this movement of changing the direction of the *march*, the order is for the head of the column only; they therefore do not wait for the word *march*, but wheel as soon as they hear the word *wheel;* when the right hand man of the front rank becomes the pivot, and each man looks to the left and feels to the right, and the rear rank incline to the left so as to cover their file-leaders. The second platoon must not anticipate the wheel, but march square on the ground where the first wheeled, then wheel as the first platoon; continue thus until the word is given *halt*, when each one will plant the foot raised, then

Digitized by Google

bring up the other by the side of it, and the standing position resumed.

QUICK TIME.

22. The company being on the march in common time, and the officer wishing to facilitate the movement, gives the word—

Quick time—March.

When the music will immediately commence playing quick time, and each one quickens his step to 120 in a minute, or two steps in a second. To resume the common time, the command will be—

Common time—March.

23. When the music will again play common time, and each one take the step with the music.

24. It is better, when the ground and circumstances will admit, to halt the column previous to changing from common to quick, or from quick to common time; but this in a larger body than a company, is not practicable.

MARCHING TO THE FRONT IN LINE.

25. Here it is proper to remark, that the company is at close order, in a perfect line, each one feeling the touch of his fellow at the elbow; when the caution is given by the commandant—

The company will advance in line.

As soon as this caution is given, the first sergeant will take post on the right of the company in the front rank, if not already there; and the second on the left, in the front rank, and see that the line is dressed; the lieutenant on the left, four paces in

Digitized by Google

front; the ensign four paces in front of the centre of the company, who is to direct the march, and will take some object by which he may march straight to the front; and the corporals on the right of the second platoon, will follow precisely in the tracks of the ensign. As soon as the officers have taken their places, which is quickly done, the captain orders—

Forward—March.

26. The whole step off at the word *march*, in ordinary time, remembering that each file must feel and dress by the centre, and not crowd each other out of place. These rules being observed, the march will be accurately performed; without this care, the files will be broken. The commander having marched a sufficient distance to the front, gives the order—

Halt.

When the standing position is resumed, as in No. 13. Part II.

TO CHANGE THE STEP WHILE ON THE MARCH.

Change—Step.

27. At the word *step* given, when either foot is coming to the ground, the soldier quickly brings up the foot in rear just raised from the ground, to the rear of the standing foot, which will again step to the front, in the same time the other foot would have made a step, without being planted in rear of the other.

TO MARCH WITH THE REAR RANK IN FRONT IN LINE.

Company—Right about—Face.

28. The officers will pass to the front, and take post as before; the captain will pass round on the

Digitized by Google

right, the lieutenant on the left, and the ensign through the centre of the company; the first and second sergeants take post in the rear rank, now become the front. The captain then orders—

Forward—March.

This movement is performed the same as No. 25. Part II.

TO CHANGE THE DIRECTION OF MARCH IN COLUMN TO THE REAR WHILE ON THE MARCH.

Column—Mark—Time.

29. As soon as the word is given, *mark time*, each one stops short on the ground, and marks time, according to No. 36. Part I. The caution is then given—

Column will march to the rear.

By platoons—On your centre—Right about wheel—March.

30. At the word *wheel*, the officers on the right and left, face to the right and left about, or outward from the platoon; the officer on the right, faces to the right about, and the officer on the left, faces to the left about; and at the word *march*, the remainder of the platoon wheels on the centre man of the front rank, by the right's stepping back, and the left forward. The rear rank must incline to the left and rear, and exactly cover their file-leader of the front rank. The officers having faced to the rear, do not wheel, but mark time, and serve as markers on the flanks, until the platoons have completed the wheel, and formed a line between them, facing to the original rear. The word is then given—

Forward—March.

When they will march directly the contrary way of the former, with the left in front.

Digitized by Google

NOTE.—This, you will notice, will change the position of the officers; the sergeants being on the right, and the corporals on the left. This is the proper position at all times when the left is in front. As has been before remarked, the right then becomes the governing flank; the sergeants must then of course be on that flank. When the front is changed in any other way but wheeling, the officers change places by the sergeant's passing in front of the platoon, and the corporals in rear; or should they wheel into line with the left in front, the officers will immediately take their places as before.

TO FORM COMPANY ON THE MARCH IN COLUMN OF PLATOONS, RIGHT IN FRONT.

Column—Form Company—March.

31. At the word *march*, the leading platoon will oblique half their length to the right, and shorten their step; and the rear platoon lengthen their step, and oblique the same distance to the left, and come up, and both dress by the centre; the word is then given, *forward*, when the whole move in line as described in Part II. No. 25. As soon as the caution is given, *form company*, each officer must step briskly to his place; the first sergeant will pass in front of his platoon, and take post on the right; the lieutenant and ensign move quickly to the front.

TO FORM PLATOONS ON THE MARCH.

Form Platoons—March.

32. The left platoon marks time until the right have passed them; the right then obliques to the left with the same length of step, half their distance; and the left obliques to the right with a short step,

Digitized by Google

until they get their wheeling distance, and cover exactly the first platoon; the lieutenant then gives the word, *forward*, when they move to the front in open column.

NOTE.—Sections may be formed in the same manner, and the front diminished on the same principle, until the whole get in file-marching. Observe to double your left behind the right, if the right is in front; and the reverse of this when the left is in front. In this manner they will have retained their proper situation for forming the line.

THE COMPANY IN OPEN COLUMN OF PLATOONS FILING TO THE FRONT.

Column—From the right of platoons—File to the front—March.

33. At the *caution*, the first sergeant steps in front of his platoon, and at the word *march*, gives the word to the first platoon, *right face*, and steps immediately in front of the leading man of the front rank; the lieutenant gives the word to the second platoon, *right face*, and all face to the right at the word, except the right hand file of each platoon, the front man of which moves directly to the front, the rear man steps to his right and marches in close order. As soon as the platoons face to the right, the rear rank incline to the left, in close order, with the front rank, and each file turns on the ground of the first; the right hand file must step a step of 36 inches when turning, that the files may not open. The lieutenant marches two paces on the left of the centre of the second platoon; the ensign two paces on the left of the centre of the company. The whole are then in file marching, with their right leading in the direction of the column's front; the principles of which must be strictly attended to, as directed in the Drill.

Digitized by Google

Part I. No. 35. Each file must exactly cover those in front, and march in close order. If the captain chooses, he may *halt* and *front*, and they will then be in line, and may wheel up by company on the right.

TO FORM PLATOONS FROM FILE-MARCHING.

Company—Form Platoons—March.

34. As soon as the word is given, *march*, the lieutenant and first sergeant gives the word, *left half face—forward.* The first sergeant steps in front of his platoon until it is formed, then takes his post on the left; the leading man of the front rank continues marching to the front without varying his step; the remainder of the front rank come up in succession, and form on the right hand man; the right hand man of the rear rank steps one pace to the left, and covers the leading man of the front rank; the others come up in succession, and form the same as the front rank. Observe, as soon as the column is formed, to dress, and feel to the left.

TO MOVE A COLUMN TO A FLANK WHEN ON THE MARCH.

Column—Right face—March.

35. The same principles, as to the step, are to be observed in this movement, as in filing to the front, as the lock step is to be regarded in all file movements. The music and all face to the right, and move in that direction, until the order is given—

Column—Left face—Forward.

36. When all will face to the left and move to the front in column; but if the files have not attended to the lock step, but have opened their files, they must

Digitized by Google

close to the left. The officer should be careful to give the word *forward*, as the left foot strikes the ground.

TO FILE FROM THE RIGHT AND LEFT OF PLATOONS TO THE FRONT, WHILE ON THE MARCH IN COLUMN.

Column—from the right and left of platoons—File to the front—March.

37. At the word *march*, the officers commanding platoons, quickly give the word, *outward face—right and left turn.* The files briskly face outwards from the centre; that half which faces to the right will turn successively by files to the left, filing to the front. Those who face to the left, turn to the right, and file to the front, forming two lines, one on each flank. The files are to be kept closed, but the sections are to march wheeling distance.

TO CHANGE THE FRONT WHILE MARCHING BY FILES ON THE RIGHT AND LEFT FLANK.

Company will change front—Rear Platoon—March.

38. The commandant of the rear platoon instantly orders, *form platoon.* At the word *march*, by the captain, the rear platoon all face inwards; and at the word from the commandant of the platoon, they wheel to the centre, and dress by the right, and march through the centre between the two lines with the long step. The officer of the first platoon will give the word *inward face*, and *wheel*, as soon as the platoon in rear have advanced as far as the leading file of his platoon, and form up in the same manner as the second. The left now being in front, the officers change places as before directed.

Digitized by Google

TO FILE TO THE FRONT FROM THE RIGHT AND LEFT OF RANKS, MARCHING IN COLUMN.

From the right and left of ranks—File to the front—March.

39. At the word *file to the front*, the lieutenant and first sergeant quickly give the word *right and left face;* when the front rank of both platoons will face to the left, and the rear ranks, excepting the corporals on the right, face to the right, and at the word *march*, the front ranks file to the front, following the first and second sergeants, who move to the front without facing; and the rear rank file to the front, following the corporals on that flank; and the ranks will be in file-marching, in close order, the front rank on the left flank, and the rear rank on the right flank, the music in front between the two lines.

TO FORM PLATOONS FROM FILE-MARCHING BY RANKS.

Ranks—Form platoons—March.

40. The officer must make a considerable pause between the words *platoons* and *march*, that the officers commanding platoons may face them inward, and be ready to wheel as soon as the word is given *march*. And the front rank, who are on the left, will wheel first to the left, then the rear rank wheel to the right, and march in open column, ranks closed.

TO FORM A LINE FROM FILE-MARCHING BY RANKS.

Company—Mark time.

Front rank—By platoons—Countermarch.

Rear rank—Front face—Take close order—March.

41. At the word *mark time*, each one stops short on the ground, and marks time, according to No. 36,

Digitized by Google

Part I. And at the word *countermarch*, the two sergeants give the word to the front rank of their respective platoons, *left about turn*, and turn to the left, and countermarch on their own ground, until the right of each platoon gets on the ground of the left, and the left on the ground of the right. They then give the word, *halt—front face.* And the lieutenant will immediately see that the line is dressed.

NOTE.—These movements are all useful to habituate the soldier to all the various changes necessary to qualify him for the field; and to accustom the officers to give the word of command with promptness and resolution. They may be performed by column of sections as well as platoons, substituting the word sections instead of platoons; or the column again formed by sections after breaking off by platoons.

TO COUNTERMARCH A LINE BY FILES AND CHANGE FRONT.

Company will countermarch by files on the centre and change front.

Platoons—Inward face—Two side steps to the right—March. To the left countermarch—March. Front face.*

42. At the word *face*, all face to the centre; then, at the word, step to the right, so that the rear rank of the first platoon, and the front rank of the second platoon, may pass each other; and at the word *countermarch*, the two centre files turn round to the left and face each other on the original line; the other files do the same, and turn into line in succession;

* If the company are in one rank, and divided into four sub-divisions or platoons, then the word is given, *divisions—inward face*, instead of platoons; and if the officer chooses, he may march one division or platoon, two paces to the front before facing, to avoid the side step.

Digitized by Google

the front rank of the first platoon passing round the rear rank, and the rear rank of the second platoon passing round the front rank, and form by files facing the centre. The files must be careful not to form so close but they may face without crowding each other out of place. And at the word *front face*, they all face to the original rear; the first platoon will face to the right, and the second to the left, and the company will be formed with their front changed.

REMARKS.

As a change of front is so important a military movement, and so differently understood by military men, that I have thought best to add an article on this head, before I proceed to a further explanation of the different modes of performing it. And I cannot do it more fully and consonant to my own views, than in the words of Gen. ISAAC MALTBY, author of the "Elements of War."

"*Change* of *Front*, in a military sense, is a change of the facing of the line to a new front, directly to the rear of the old one, combined also with a change of the wings or flanks, (with all the divisions and files of the corps,) in such a manner that each officer and soldier retains the same relative situation as he held before the change; all which may be done on the same ground.

"The correctness of this definition will not be disputed. It will then, undeniably follow, that a mere facing about, (as some have alleged,) is not a change of front, but only a change of the facing of the line. Nor is the *change* of *position*, (as military writers consider it,) a *change of front*. When you hear of a body of troops that have taken up a new position; will you understand that they have only

Digitized by Google

faced about, or changed their front on their old line? or do you understand that they have moved from their old position? The latter is to be understood. The truth is, that change of front, and change of position, are materially different.

"The change of front does not necessarily imply a change of position, nor the change of position the change of front. A line may have moved forward a hundred yards, directly to the front, and have changed position, but not the front.

"All new positions, therefore, which are parallel, must, of course, be to the front or rear of the old line. All under the head of *intersecting positions*, MUST be obliquely, and both of them supposing a *movement from the old line*, and neither of them implying a change of front.

"Why then are these two important movements mixed together in the instruction and explanation? *one* used for the *other*, or *both* for *one?* It will be acknowledged that *precision* in *movements* in a body of troops, is the presage of victory. Is not *precision* in the *words* which are used to indicate *those movements* to the troops also important? Beside the inconvenience as respects precision in the words of command, it will also be perplexing to the young student in tactics. *This is asserted from experience.* Being under the necessity of examining the subject of *change of front*, a number of years since, I took up a celebrated work, and found, as I supposed, what I wished, the section headed "*Change of Front.*" The first caution announced the intention of "changing front;" the second was a "change of position;" and all the following words of command to the same purport. What was my disappointment, after finishing this article, to find that instead of changing front, it was a mere echelon change of position, by flinging forward the left of battalion, and

Digitized by Google

forming on the right company. The perplexity which it then occasioned, has since convinced me, by examining the subject, that every writer who does not make the true distinction, is under the necessity of falling into the same inconsistency, before he can complete an article on the subject. Should it be persisted in to disregard this distinction, it must follow, that the definition which is allowed, must be altered and improved by adding another head, viz. *the change of position on the same ground*, or within the old line. In this case, the words "*change of front*" may be dispensed with, as to retaining the term. But this would not be so technically correct; and the explanation of several changes would be more perplexed."

TO CHANGE THE FRONT OF A LINE BY SECTIONS.

Company will countermarch by sections on the centre, and change front.

Second platoon—Right about face.

Sections inward wheel—March.

Countermarch to the left—March.

Second platoon—Right about face.

43. One half of the company face to the rear; then all wheel to the left, or towards the centre, and halt without the word. The company are then in two columns, the right wing in front of the line, with the left in front, and the left wing in column in rear of the line, with the right in front. On hearing the word *march*, the two centre sections will wheel again to the left, and form a line; the remainder of the sections pass in rear of the line ready formed, and wheel in as soon as their flanks are uncovered. If

Digitized by Google

they are to move off the ground before they re-change front, then the music will wheel with the column and march in rear of the first, and wheel into line on their right. The second platoon is then fronted by order, and the whole dressed. If the music play in this, as in all other movements, each soldier will mark time after the order is finished, until he hears the word *halt*, or the music stop playing.

The company may be countermarched by files from the right or left, on the same principle as from the centre.

TO FILE FROM LINE INTO OPEN COLUMN TO THE REAR.

Company will file from the right of platoons into open column to the rear.

Right face—File to the rear—March.

Halt—Front face.

44. At the word *face*, all face to the right; the first and second sergeants go to the right of their platoons; the first sergeant will take post in front of the first man in the front rank, facing to the rear; the second sergeant will disengage one file to the rear from the right of the second platoon, and takes post in the place of the front rank man, facing likewise to the rear. At the word *march*, they give the word *right turn*, and all turn by files to the right, and march in a perpendicular line to the rear, in close order, until they hear the word *halt*. They are then fronted by order of the captain. The files leading, must dress by each other towards the centre.

NOTE.—It is not proper to file from the right to the rear, to march with right in front; because the right flank in that case will be dressed, and not the left, but all modes of filing should be understood, as they may at times be useful.

Digitized by Google

TO WHEEL INTO LINE FROM COLUMN OF PLATOON, OR SECTIONS, RIGHT IN FRONT.

Column—To the left—Wheel into line—March.

45. Previous to wheeling, it must be seen that the left of the column is dressed. As soon as the word is given, *wheel into line*, each soldier turns his head briskly to the right, and feels easy to the left; and at the word *march*, they wheel round in quick time, if the music are not playing, and halt a little short of the line, and immediately dress up by the right; the first sergeant will then take post on the right of the company, the other officers according to No. 10. Part II.

TO FILE FROM LINE INTO OPEN COLUMN TO THE FRONT.

Company will file from the left of platoons into open column to the front.

To the left face—File to the front—March.

Halt—Front face.

46. At the word *left face*, they all face to the left, except the sergeant on the left, and the front rank man on the left of the first platoon; the first sergeant steps briskly in front of this man, facing to the front. At the word *march*, the sergeants give the word *right turn*, and march in a direct line to the front. This movement, in other respects, is performed the same as filing to the rear, No. 44.

NOTE.—This is the proper mode of filing into column, to march with the right in front. Filing to the front or rear, by sections, is conducted in the same manner. The first sergeant will lead the first section, the third, the second; the corporal on the right of the third section, front rank, will lead the

Digitized by Google

third, and the second sergeant the fourth section; each one giving the word *right*, or *left turn*, as the case may be. The third sergeant will immediately take post in rear of his section, after they are fronted and dressed.

Filing from the left to the rear, and from the right to the front, may be performed in the same manner, observing, that if you file from the left of sections, (or any other division,) to the rear, the words must be, *left face—left turn;* and when halted in column, the ranks must be faced to the right, (instead of left,) and the right of each section becomes the pivot; as filing from the left of sections to the rear, flings the left of the column in front, and the wheeling into line must be to the right. Filing to the *front* from the *right* of sections, (or any other divisions,) the words will be the reverse of those in filing from the *left* to the *front*. When halted in open column, and ordered to front, they must face to the left. This also flings the left of the column in front. In this manner you may bring off a regiment from the parade, left of column leading. It must be remembered that in wheeling or filing into column, the music must not play.

TO CHANGE THE DIRECTION OF MARCH IN COLUMN ON A MOVEABLE PIVOT, TO EITHER FLANK.

Column—To the Right—(or Left) turn.

47. At the word, the pivot of that flank will shorten the step, and the reverse or wheeling flank will lengthen the step, until the column have obtained the direction required; when the commander orders *forward*—when the whole section or platoon step off together by the ordinary step, to the front direct. It must be observed in this movement, that the same

Digitized by Google

flank governs, as in the march to the front direct, and dress and feel the same way.

NOTE.—This movement is useful in wheeling a close column, where each flank must advance, to prevent being in the way of those sections or platoons in rear: and also to follow the windings of a road, or where the ground will not admit of a full wheel.

THE COMPANY MARCHING IN COLUMN TO FORM A LINE ON THE LEADING SECTION, FACING THE RIGHT FLANK.

Column—Form a line on the first section, facing the right.

First section—To the right wheel—March.

48. At the word *march*, the front section will wheel and move two paces to the front, and halt by order of the sergeant, who will immediately see that they are all dressed parallel with the line of march. The right of the other sections now become the governing flank, they of course feel and dress to the right, and march close in rear of the line, ready formed, until the right flank is uncovered, when they wheel to the right into line and mark time, and dress by order of the officer commanding the section. When the captain perceives that the line is formed and well dressed, he gives the word—*Halt.*

TO CHANGE THE HEAD OF A COLUMN ON THE MARCH, WHEN IN PLATOONS.

Column will change its head—Rear to the front.

Sections—To the right and left oblique—March.

Mark—Time.

49. The sections of the first platoon will oblique to the right and left at the order, sufficient for the rear platoon to pass them; the order is then given,

Digitized by Google

mark time, and the first platoon only will mark time. As soon as the second platoon, arrives in a line with the first platoon, the first sergeant will give the order, *form platoon*, when the sections of the first platoon will oblique to the right and left, and form platoon in rear of the second, and move to the front at wheeling distance. The sergeant who is in front of the music will face to the rear at the word *mark time;* and as soon as the rear platoon have obtained their proper distance from the music, he will face again to the front, and march, when the music will follow.

NOTE.—There are various ways of changing the head of a column; but an officer that would avoid confusion, must avoid a great variety of ways of performing the same movement, when under similar circumstances. But a variety of movements are not objected to, as they are not likely to create confusion. When the company are in one rank, I think it better to wheel by sections to the right and left about, and mark time, facing the rear; then wheel forward again to form the platoon. But when the company are in two ranks, it is thought better to oblique to the right and left, instead of wheeling. Observe, the officers on the right and left must change places as soon as the movement is completed, as the right is now to govern. In the War Regulations there is no rule prescribed for changing the head of a column.

TO DIMINISH THE FRONT OF AN OPEN COLUMN OF PLATOONS, RIGHT IN FRONT, BY BREAKING OFF FILES.

50. The column marching with the right in front, where the width of the passage may gradually decrease, the commandant finds it necessary to break off one file. He then orders—

Digitized by Google

One file on the right—Break off—March.

51. Immediately the file on that flank will mark time; when the rear man is clear of the rear rank, he inclines to the left, and takes post behind the second file from the right flank. As soon as both ranks have passed the front rank man, he also inclines to the left, and takes post in rear of the first file on the right, and on the right of his file-cover. If it be necessary that more files be broken off, the order is repeated—

One file on the right—Break off—March.

52. The files break off, and take post as did the other. The files which are already in the rear, incline to the left, sufficient to gain one file, equal to the one broken off, and shorten the step, to make room for the two files last broken off, to form between them and the rear rank. The corporals on the right close up to the remaining part of the section, as often as the files break off.

Files may be broken off in this manner, if necessary, until the whole company are in file-marching, with the left of platoons leading. If an opening should present, directly off at the right angles with the front, the platoon may be faced briskly to the right, and moved directly forward in line; the sergeant shifting to the right. The second platoon will face on the ground of the first.

TO FORM FILES TO THE FRONT, BROKEN OFF AS ABOVE.

One file to the front—March.

53. When the file last broken off incline to the right and resume their place in line, the sergeant also moves to the right to give them room. The other files in the rear close up to the rear rank, and

Digitized by Google

incline one file to the right; always covering the two flank files, which former files may be ordered up to their places in the same manner, observing the same rules, until the whole are again formed in column.

Files may be broken off the left flank in the manner here directed.

Files of *two*, *three*, or *four*, may be broken off at the same time and on the same principles.

Files may be broken off both flanks at the same time. The front however is never to be reduced in its files below the number of the ranks when broken off one flank; nor less than double that number when broken off both flanks.

TO FORM OPEN COLUMN OF PLATOONS, RIGHT IN FRONT.

Company will form open column of platoons, right in front.

Right face—March.

54. When the company consist of two platoons, the first platoon will stand fast; the second will face at the word; and the lieutenant will go to the right, and detach one file to the rear, and take post on the leading flank of the front rank. At the word *march*, they turn by files to the right, and march until they have obtained wheeling distance to the rear, then turn to the left, and march into column. As soon as the lieutenant arrives in a perpendicular line with the right of the first platoon, he will give the word *halt;* and after making a considerable pause, (to give time for the files to close, if they have not observed the lock step,) *front face—right dress.* The lieutenant then takes post in front of his platoon. If the column are to move off the ground at this time, the music will take post in front of the first platoon; if not, they will remain on the right.

Digitized by Google

If there be a number of platoons to form in column, they will turn by files to the right, in proportion to the distance they are from the head of the column; and so far to the rear as to arrive on the line of the left of the column at wheeling distance; then turn to the left, and march into column parallel with the front.

NOTE.—This mode of forming column is seldom, if ever practised; this is the mode, however, prescribed in the War Regulations. If it should ever become necessary to form open column in rear of the right, the remaining platoons may be faced to the rear, then half wheeled to the left, into *echelon*, and marched directly to their front, until the left arrive on a line with the right flank of the column, then halt until the platoon in rear have passed their reverse flank, (who will oblique to the right, if necessary, to clear them,) then face to the right-about, and half wheel to the right, and form parallel with the front platoon.

This mode of forming open column may be objected to by some, but it is found preferable to filing, especially with undisciplined troops. If the line is to be wheeled on the right backward, then the echelon is not objected to as being an incorrect mode. Now if the line can be formed with more facility by the echelon than by filing, then it is very obvious that the column may likewise be formed in this way with greater rapidity; for the line may be formed, then wheeled into column, as soon as they could file into column, close up and dress. But it is seldom, if ever, that circumstances occur to render it necessary to form an open column at right angles with the line. Should the officer wish to form a column on the right, for the purpose of marching to the front in open order; he might form in close order, and extend to wheeling distance as they move to the front. But

Digitized by Google

the better way would be, to move the front platoon their length to the front, then wheel the remainder on the left backward, and all wheel to the left on the ground that the front platoon occupied before marching.

TO FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF PLATOONS ON THE RIGHT, RIGHT IN FRONT.

55. The words of command for this movement are the same as for the open column, making use of the word *close column*, instead of *open column*. The movement is likewise the same, excepting the turn of files to the rear is not so great.

NOTE.—It is not deemed necessary to describe all the various modes of forming column on the right in rear, and on the right in front; likewise on the left and on the centre; the principles are the same in all. The officers must be prompt in giving the words of command to their several platoons to *halt*, *front*, and *dress;* and be careful never to run past the flank of the platoon on which they form; it being a common fault to form an oblique line with the front, instead of right angle.

TO DISPLAY AN OPEN COLUMN OF PLATOONS TO THE LEFT, FORMED ON THE RIGHT IN FRONT.

Company will display column to the left on the front—Left face—March.

56. At the word *face*, the officers take post on the leading flank, front rank; and at the word *march*, they lead out their platoons parallel with the line of formation. The officers keep in a line from the head to the rear of the column, so that the heads of the several platoons shall be even, and no platoon projecting out before the others, until they halt to

Digitized by Google

form up. Each officer commanding a platoon must turn his head to the right, to see when they are uncovered by those in front, when they will give the word *halt*, with a pause, as directed in forming column, that the files may close; and at the word *front*, face together; the officer then gives the word *forward*, and when arrived on the line, *halt*, *right dress*, or *mark time*, and *dress*, if the music are playing.

The forming and displaying of column are such common movements, that I need not dwell on the detail. The only difference in this movement, as here described, from what is now generally practised, is their marching out of the column parallel with the front, until they have obtained their true distance for forming the line. This I understand to be the mode practised in the army; although not described in the War Regulations; but the words of command used for this movement imply a parallel filing of platoons.

TO DISPLAY A COLUMN FORMED ON THE RIGHT CENTRE PLATOON*.

Company will display column to the right and left—from the right centre platoon.

Right and left face—March.

57. At the words *right* and *left face*, those in front of the platoon named, face to the right, those in rear, face to the left; and officers commanding, take post on the leading flank of each. On the word *march*, the direction for displaying as in the preceding No. will be followed with this addition,—a non-commissioned officer is to remain on the left flank of the head platoon; and as soon as the platoon from which the display is made is uncovered,

* This supposes a company to consist of four platoons.

Digitized by Google

they move to the front, and take the place of the front platoon, dressing by the marker.

Observe—all columns are to be displayed so as to form a line on the front division.

TO DISPLAY AN OPEN COLUMN OF PLATOONS, RIGHT IN FRONT, BY THE ECHELON.

Column will wheel into echelon to form a line on the front platoon.

On the right backward half wheel—March.

Echelon form a line on the front—March.

58. The front platoon stand fast; the remainder make a half wheel on the right, by the left's stepping back one eighth of a circle. At the word *march*, they move at the same time, and arrive on the line in succession, and as soon as the right flank reaches the line, the officer gives the word, *right—half wheel;* and as soon as wheeled, (if the music be playing,) he gives the word *mark time;* if they are not, the word is *halt, dress.* This is the correct mode of displaying an open column.

NOTE.—If the officer wishes to form a line obliquely with the front, either to the front or rear, he may wheel the front platoon, and dress them in the new line, previous to giving the word, *form a line.*

This movement is the same as in the War Regulations, except it is there directed that the first platoon march wheeling distance to the front, and the remainder wheel forward instead of backward. This is equally correct; but the former saves time and words of command; and furthermore, the situation of the ground may not admit of moving them to the front. But if it be wished to form a line to the front, they may be marched to any distance, and dressed, and the column formed on them.

Digitized by Google

TO FORM THE SQUARE FROM COLUMN OF PLATOONS, MARCHING IN TWO RANKS.

Column—Mark time—Form the square—March.

59. At the word *march*, the front rank of the first platoon move to the front, (having previously marked time,) with a step of 28 inches; the rear rank continue to mark time until the front have obtained wheeling distance, they then advance with the same length of step. The lieutenant gives the word to the second platoon, *right and left face*, when the front rank will face to the left, and the rear rank to the right; the sergeant immediately gives the word *right turn;* the corporal to the rear rank, *left turn*, and immediately close up with a long step to the right and left flank of the front rank of the first platoon; the rear man of each rank will be in line with the rear rank. The square will thus be formed with the front rank of the first platoon in front, and the rear rank in rear; the first rank of the second platoon on the left, and the rear rank on the right of the square, all in close order. When the captain discovers that the files are closed, he will give the word *forward*, when they all move to the front with the common step of 28 inches. This square may be marched to either flank, by facing; it should never be done by wheeling; they should first mark time, then face to the right, or left, or rear, then march off at the word. It may be done by facing without marking time, if troops are well disciplined.

NOTE.—The *square* is more readily formed by a company in one rank, marching in four sub-divisions. It is then done without marking time. The first sub-division shorten the step; the second files to the right, and forms the right of the square; the

Digitized by Google

third files to the left, and forms the left of the square; the fourth will advance and form the rear.

TO OPEN RANKS OF COMPANIES, MARCHING IN COLUMN.

If a company are formed in two ranks, they may frequently be extended to wheeling distance while on the march, for the purpose of show, or evolutions.

Rear ranks—Take wheeling distance—March.

60. At the word *march*, they all mark time, except the front rank of the first platoon, which continue the usual step, and when they have gained wheeling distance from the rear rank, they and the front rank of the second platoon follow; and when wheeling distance from the rear, they also move to the front, observing wheeling distance.

There are various movements of the battalion which may be practised by a company in one rank, or four sub-divisions, which cannot be performed with propriety in two ranks, or two platoons.

TO OPEN RANKS FOR PASSING IN REVIEW, AND FOR OTHER PURPOSES.

Rear rank—Take open order—March.

61. At the word *march*, the rear rank only, vary their step, by marking time, until the front have taken three steps, which will give the distance of open order; when they take the usual or common step, by order of the corporal. The front rank of the second platoon must see that they do not extend to more than wheeling distance from the front rank of the first platoon.

Digitized by Google

Observe the distinction between *open order* and *wheeling distance*. Wheeling distance is never taken by ranks of a larger body than one or two companies; and the order is given designating the distance. When the order is given to *take open order*, it always implies four paces from the front rank, which will enable the column to march without extending.

TO OPEN RANKS IN LINE.

Rear rank—Take open order—March.

62. At the words, *rear rank—take open order*, the sergeants on the right and left, step four paces to the rear, from the front rank, or three paces from the rear rank. At the word *march*, the rear rank move by the back step, and halt without the word, and dress by the two sergeants on the right and left. The non-commissioned officers in rear keep two paces from the rear rank. The subalterns move three paces to the front, (if in the line,) the lieutenant on the left, and the ensign in the centre, and face the company. The captain, who is the drill officer, has no particular station assigned him, but must see that every part is correctly performed. As soon as the rear rank are dressed, the first and second sergeants take post on the right and left of the front rank.

TO CLOSE RANKS.

Rear rank—Take close order—March.

63. At the word *march*, the rear rank close to within one pace of the front rank; the officers resume their places as before. Each soldier will be careful to halt directly in rear of his file-leader, and dress, not only with his own rank, but the man in front.

Digitized by Google

TO FORM A LINE TO THE RIGHT FLANK WHEN MARCHING BY FILES IN TWO RANKS, THE RIGHT LEADING.

Company—By files to the right—Form line—March.

64. At the word *march*, the front file turns to the right, and steps one foot to the front; the right hand man, who is the leading man of the rear rank, then marks time. The left hand man of the file obliques one step to the right, and forms directly in front of the right hand man of the file. The sergeant who leads the front rank, will step to the right of the first man in the front rank, and see that the men dress as they form. The files all march close in rear of the line thus commenced, until they pass the last formed file, when they turn into line the same as the first; each front man obliquing to the right to form in front of the rear rank man.

The officers whose posts are in rear of the line, will march on the right flank, until they arrive on the right, where the line is commenced, when they mark time until the rear have past them; they then follow, and take their places as before.

THE COMPANY WHEN MARCHING BY FILES TO THE RIGHT FLANK, FORMING TO THE FRONT BY FILES.

Company—By files to the front—Form line—Left half face—March.

65. At the words, *left half face*, they all face to the left, in proportion to their distance from the front, excepting the leading sergeant, and the first man in the rear; the sergeant steps one pace to the right, and the man in rear steps one pace to the front, in place of the sergeant. Thus the front rank is commenced. Each file must face so far to the left as to be able to march directly to the front, to his

Digitized by Google

place in line. At the word *march*, the rear rank man of the right file will step one step to the left; each other file marches independent over the shortest possible distance, and form the line in succession, observing to dress as they form.

The foregoing examples are deemed sufficient to enable the officer to form to any given point from file-marching.

TO FORM THE CROSS FROM COLUMN OF SUB-DIVISIONS, OR ONE RANK.

Column—Form the cross—March.

66. When the company form in one rank, the four sergeants are on the left of the sub-divisions, and the corporals on the right; (see Plate I. and II. for light infantry movements.) At the word, *form the cross*, the first sergeant gives the word to the first sub-division, *right face*, and takes post on the right flank and files them to the front; the second sub-division will oblique their length to the right, and close up to the rear file of the first division; the third will lengthen their step, and continue marching directly to the front, and form on the left of the second sub-division; the fourth will likewise face to the right and file to the front, and lengthen their step, and form a line with the first sub-division, in close order, with the second sergeant in rear. The second and third sub-divisions dress and feel to the centre.

This movement might be performed with more facility, by the second and third sub-divisions obliquing to the right and left, and forming on the centre. But for the sake of uniformity, it is thought best to form it on the right, so that all filing into line from the march in column is performed by filing from the flanks.

Digitized by Google

TO REDUCE THE CROSS AND FORM COLUMN.

Company—Form column—March.

67. At the word *march*, the first and fourth subdivisions half face to the left, and form up on the first file; the second will oblique to the left into column, and the third shorten the step, and all take wheeling distance.

This figure may be faced and moved off with either arm leading, the same as the square.

OF THE ECHELON.

Echelon movements or positions, are not only necessary and applicable to the immediate attacks and retreats of great bodies, but also to the previous oblique and direct changes of situation, which a company, battalion, or a more considerable corps already formed in line, may be obliged to make to the front or rear, or on a particular fixed division of the line. Echelons are called *direct* and *indirect*. The former has for its object a position square to the front, or directly to the rear, on parallel lines. The latter is designed for taking up positions obliquely, or a line intersecting the original one, diagonally. In either case, the divisions of which the echelon is composed, are marched up and formed on the new line, successively as they arrive. With this difference, however, that in the echelon direct, the platoons or divisions, march at a prescribed distance, and have one general front, and take up parallel positions only. In the *indirect* echelon, each division has a front of its own, and a distance is to be preserved between each, according to the obliquity of the line to be formed, and is not to be governed by the extent of the front of its own division, as in open column, but are to march in the exact position into which they are wheeled.

Digitized by Google

The echelon is formed either from line or column. It is formed from line, by wheeling forward to any point short of a full wheel. From column it may be formed by wheeling backward, either less or more than a full wheel. Therefore, observe, that any wheel *short of ninety degrees*, or quarter circle, forms an echelon to the front. And any wheel more than a quarter circle, forms an echelon to the rear. Of course, any wheel of divisions from line, to form an angle with the line, is an open column, and any other point whatever will be an echelon. When wheeled into open column, or a full quarter circle, the column has one general front; but if wheeled either less or more, each division has a front peculiar to itself, and independent. When wheeled up from line on the right of platoons to form on a front division on an angle of 45 degrees, or a half wheel of the line, the director on the right follows near upon the track of the left file of the preceding division. In this case, the right of platoons is the pivot on which the echelon is directed, and to which they must feel and dress, and on which the wheel is made into line when arrived at the place designated for that purpose. The inner flank of the echelon, or the flank next to the division on which the formation is made, is always to be considered as the governing flank.

The wheel into echelon of platoons, or any other divisions of a corps, must always be proportioned to the obliquity of the line which is intended to be formed, whether in front or rear. The nearer the intended line of formation approaches to a right angle with the original line, the greater the wheel must be in echelon. Previous to giving the order to wheel into *echelon*, to form on any named division, the officer commanding that division should be cautioned to wheel them into the direction of the new line; the residue, at the order, will wheel into a diagonal line

Digitized by Google

with the line of formation, or one half the distance of the first platoon.

By these movements a line may be formed on any platoon or division, intersecting any part of the old line, at right angles, or diagonally on points within the corps; or on points distant from it. The wings may be thrown back or forward. If to form on a point within the line, the platoon on which the line is to be formed, is first wheeled into the new direction, and the others marched and aligned with it. If to form on a line not within itself, but a point distant, the markers having designated the points of *appui* and *formation*, each platoon is wheeled the same number of paces, and marched and formed on the right platoon, (if the line is towards the right,) which will first halt and dress on the new line; and the others halt and dress successively.

If it be required to form a line intersecting the old one at right angles, to oppose an enemy coming directly against your right flank; wheel the centre company or platoon on its centre a full wheel to the right; bring the right wing to the right-about; wheel the whole to the right by platoons or companies, half of a full wheel; march and form on the new line, and dress by the centre platoon.

The movements in *echelon* for an attack, or change of position to repel an attack, being considered as important as any of the improved movements in military tactics, and very little understood by the militia of this country, I have thought proper to be more particular in this article, in explaining the principles, and their use, than would be necessary for the disciplinarian.

The most of these movements are applicable to a company formed in one rank, and in four sub-divisions, which are described in this Part; but a more

Digitized by Google

more minute detail will be found in the movements of the battalion, in Part III.

The echelon movements for wheeling the line to change position, are called, in the War Regulations, changing of front. The absurdity of this definition, you will find under the head of changing front of a line, No. 42. Part II.

TO ADVANCE IN DIRECT ECHELON OF SECTIONS, FROM THE RIGHT.

NOTE.—In all the echelon movements by company, they will be considered as in one rank, and divided into two divisions, four sub-divisions, and eight sections. It is laid down as a principle always to be observed, never to mark time previous to moving to the front; except when the sections or sub-divisions move to the front in succession; then it will be necessary, for the following reason:—Should any number of steps be designated as the distance for the sections or sub-divisions to march from each other; for instance three, or five, or any odd number, and the company not marking time, the sections would be compelled to step off with the right foot, or they would not have the step with those in front.

Mark Time—March.

By sections—From the right in succession at three paces distant—March.

68. At the word *march*, the first section will move directly to the front; as soon as they have gained the number of steps designated, the next section will follow; so in succession to the left, until all are on the march in echelon, with the right leading, which

Digitized by Google

is then the governing section, and to which all the sections must conform. As soon as the front section arrives on the ground where the captain wishes to commence the formation of the new line, he gives the word, *echelon—form a line—march.* As soon as the sergeant hears the word *march*, he will give the order to his section to *mark time*, and will immediately see that they are perfectly dressed; the other sections will arrive on the line in succession, and dress by the sections ready formed.

REMARKS.

The company may advance in echelon from the left on the same principle, substituting the word *left* instead of *right;* and they may advance to any distance the officer may choose; sometimes at one pace distant, sometimes at half wheeling distance, and sometimes at wheeling distance. As soon as the word is given, *mark time*, each officer commanding the section, (if the echelon is to be marched by sections,) will take post on that flank next the section or sub-division on which the movement is to commence.

TO HALF WHEEL THE LINE TO THE RIGHT BY AN ECHELON.

Company will wheel into an echelon to form a line on the right.

By sections—To the right quarter wheel—March.

69. The first section will have previously made a half wheel to the right and dressed; and at the word *march*, the officers of the remaining sections must judge by the eye the true distance for a quarter wheel, and halt them as soon as that is completed,

Digitized by Google

and take post on the right flank. The captain will then give the word—

Echelon—Form a line on the first section—March.

70. At the word *march*, they all step off together, (except the first section, which will mark time,) and march square to the front, until the right hand man reaches the line; when the officer commanding the section will give the word *right quarter wheel*, which, when completed, *mark time;* and each officer will go to his proper post in line. When the captain perceives that the line is formed and properly dressed, he will give the word *halt.*

NOTE.—It must be remembered, as before observed, that in wheeling into echelon to change position of the line, the wheel of the sections or sub-divisions, must be but half as great as that required of the line; in which case each section may march square to the front. But if they make a full wheel, so as to stand parallel with the line of formation, each section must be continually obliquing to the left, or the line will be contracted so far as to bring the eighth section on the ground of the fifth.

TO MOVE THE LINE TO THE FRONT, AND ON AN ANGLE OF FORTY-FIVE DEGREES TO THE RIGHT, BY AN ECHELON.

Company will march in echelon to form a line to the right.

Sections—To the right half wheel—March..

Echelon—Forward—March.

71. This march in echelon is difficult, and requires particular attention. The front of each sec-

Digitized by Google

tion must be retained, and the same relative situation preserved. When the captain perceives that the echelon have gained sufficient ground to the front and right, he will give the word, *halt—to the left—wheel into line—march.* If the march in echelon has been properly executed, the line will be formed in close order, parallel with the original line; and they will have gained as much ground to the right as to the front.

The march in echelon to the left flank is executed in the same manner. It may be also done to the rear, and to either flank, by facing about, and by wheeling up, in echelon, to the flank required.

TO FORM THE SQUARE FROM LINE, BY ECHELON.

Company will wheel into echelon to form the square on the fourth and fifth sections. Remaining sections right-about face.

Inward—Half wheel—March.

Echelon—Form the square—March.

72. When the order is given to wheel inward, the three first sections wheel to the right as they then face, and the three last to their left as they then face; each section, except those on which the square is formed, make a half wheel towards the centre. When the word is given to form the square, the third and sixth sections will complete their wheel inward, forming a right angle with the fourth and fifth; and the second and seventh sections march in echelon, and form on the right and left of the third and sixth. The first and eighth sections will march to the rear until they arrive at the corners of the square, they then wheel inwards and form the rear of the square:

Digitized by Google

and the second and third sections form the right, the fourth and fifth the front, and the sixth and seventh the left of the square. The square may then be faced to the centre by the captain. The music will file to the centre as soon as the word is given to form the square. This square may be marched to either flank, officers and music being in the centre. f to march to the right, the square being faced to the centre, the word is given, *to the right of the square, face;* if they are to march to the left, the word is, *to the left of the square, face;* the same to the front or rear.

TO REDUCE THE SQUARE, AND FORM THE LINE.

Square will wheel into echelon to form line.

Square—Outward—Face.

Sections—To the right and left—Half wheel—March.

Echelon—Form the line—March.

73. At the word *march,* the right of the square will wheel to the left, and the left to the right, a half wheel; the rear sections will wheel once and a half to the right and left. At the word *to form the line,* the third and sixth sections complete their wheel, and form the line; the others march in echelon, and form the line in succession, and dress by the centre.

REMARKS.

As the foregoing examples of movements are deemed sufficient to prepare the company for battalion exercise; and as I shall have occasion to speak more particularly of movements, in the Third Part, the officer is referred to that part, for a more particular detail of his duty, which, with what is already

Digitized by Google

explained, will, it is believed, enable him to apply to his company, all the different movements that may be required of him, either separately, or in regiments.

SECOND DIVISION.

TO OPEN AND CLOSE FILES FOR EXERCISE, WHETHER IN ONE RANK OR TWO.

It is frequently practised to extend files to arm's length for exercise or firing. Files may be extended for the above purposes, by company, but should never be practised by battalion; and should never be extended but to half arm's length. If the company be in one rank, and the captain wishes to go through the firing, they should number themselves into first and second divisions, the same as in forming company, No. 3. Part II. The second division will then step one pace to the rear, and stand opposite the intervals of the men in front. This will open them sufficient for the purpose of firing. If the company are in two ranks, or one, and it be wished to extend the files for exercise or firing, it may be done in the following manner:

Half arm's length to the left—Take distance—March.

74. At the word *march*, each file steps at the same time, except the first file on the right, which stands fast; the others extend by the side step the same as directed in No. 33. Part I. As soon as the files begin to leave their file on the right, they bring the right hand to the hip, or placing it on the side, and extend until they can just reach the file on the right with the right elbow; when they halt without the word, and dress, keeping the right hand on the hip.

Digitized by Google

When the captain perceives the line to be properly extended and dressed, he gives the word—

Ease arms.

75. The hand is then brought with a quick motion to the right thigh, and the standing position resumed.

76. When the ground will not admit of extending to the left, the pieces may be brought to an advance, and the line extended to the right on the same principle; bringing the left hand upon the hip. The pieces are again brought to the shoulder.

After the exercise of firing is completed, the files are closed as follows:

To the right (or left) close your files—March.

78. At the word *march*, they close by the side step to either flank, occupying at each step all the distance between the files, until in close order, when they halt without the word, and dress.

TO FORM THREE RANKS FROM ONE WHEN PARADED, WITH THE TALLEST ON THE RIGHT.

79. The company are first divided into three equal divisions. The word is then given—

First and third divisions—One pace to the front and rear—March.

When the first division will step one pace to the rear, and the third one pace to the front. The sergeant then gives the order—*Number yourselves into right and left hand files*, commencing on the right of each division. And the company will number themselves; the first file right, the second left, the third right, the fourth left, so on to the left of each division. The officer then orders—

Left hand files—One pace to the rear—March.

Digitized by Google

When that is done, the order is given—

Divisions—To the right and left—Face.

When the first division will all face to the left; the right hand files of the second and third face to the right; and the left hand files to the left. The order is then given—

Divisions—Countermarch and form ranks of three—March.

When the second division will countermarch, and form a line the same as a company in one rank, Part II. No. 5. The right hand files of the first division will march until they arrive at the centre of the second division, and halt. The left hand files will countermarch and form a line with them, facing likewise to the centre; thus forming the rear rank, with the tallest on the right and left. The right hand files of the third division will march to the right of the right flank of the second division, and halt; while the left hand files will countermarch to the right and form a line with them; thus forming the front rank. The company will then be formed in three ranks, with the tallest of each rank on the right and left, and the tallest of the ranks in rear; the ranks at one pace distant. They are then fronted by order.

METHOD OF FORMING THREE RANKS FROM TWO.

80. The company being halted, and divided into three equal divisions, the captain orders—

Third division—Two paces to the rear—March.

When they will step two paces to the rear, which will clear the front rank one pace from the rear rank of the second division. The order is then given—

Digitized by Google

Third division—Form rear rank—March.

At the words, *form rear rank*, they face to the right; and at the word *march*, the front rank step off, the rear rank mark time, until the front have past, and then follow; taking a step to the left, and form a line with the front rank, and halt without the word. The sergeant then gives the order—

Front—Face.

When they will face, and each man cover his proper file-leader.

TO FORM THREE RANKS FROM ONE WHEN THE TALLEST ARE ON THE RIGHT AND LEFT.

81. The company being told off in six equal divisions*, and the proper instructions given to each, the order is given—

One pace to the front and rear—March.

The first and sixth divisions step one pace to the rear; and the third and fourth one pace to the front; the remainder stand fast. The captain then gives the order—

Form ranks of three—March.

At the words, *form ranks of three*, they all face to the centre, except the third and fourth divisions; and at the word *march*, they move to the centre in front and rear of the third and fourth divisions, which stand fast, and halt without the word as soon as the files are closed. The third and fourth divisions thus form the front rank; the second and fifth the centre; the first and sixth the rear rank.

* Divisions are sometimes used as a general term, to signify any of those equal parts into which a company may be divided, whether platoons, sub-divisions, or sections.

Digitized by Google

It must be remembered, that the men are not to front in these movements, until the officer gives the word; they then face together.

TO FORM TWO RANKS FROM THREE, WHEN FORMED FROM ONE RANK, WHETHER COUNTERMARCHED WITH THE TALLEST ON THE RIGHT AND LEFT, OR ON THE RIGHT ONLY.

Company will form ranks of two.

82. The rear rank must be previously divided into four equal parts. When the word is given—

Rear rank—Outward face.

Form ranks of two—March.

At the word *outward face*, that half on the right face to the right, and that half on the left face to the left. At the word *march*, the first fourth part will march out their length, and mark time, until the second part have advanced in front of them; they then both face together, and march to the front, and form a line with the other ranks. The remainder of the rear rank will perform the movement the same to the left; observing, that the right and left of the rank must form in rear of the remainder.

TO FORM TWO RANKS FROM THREE, WHEN FORMED FROM TWO.

Company will form ranks of two.

Rear rank—Left face—Form ranks of two—March.

83. At the word *march*, the left division of the rear rank march out their length to the left, and mark time, until the remainder of the rank have advanced in front of them, when they will all face to the right, and march to the front, and dress by the other ranks.

Digitized by Google

TO PILE ARMS.

If it be desired to leave the arms for a short time at the place of parade, they may be stacked or piled in the following manner; both ranks should be previously numbered into right, centre, and left hand files, commencing on the right of each. That being done, the order is given—

Rear rank—Two paces to the rear—March.

Bayonets being fixed, and the pieces at a shoulder, the order is then given—

Order arms—Pile arms.

84. At the word *pile arms*, the left and centre men of each rank move their pieces six inches to the front, turning the barrels inward, that is, towards each other, and drop the muzzles together, the bayonets crossing each other at the shank. The right hand man will slip his bayonet between the other two, and step with the right foot to the front and left, and carry the breech of his piece to the front, until it shall press upon the other two; then place the breech on the ground, so that each piece shall be on an equal inclination to the point where the bayonets meet; then resume his place in line. Thus the pieces will be piled by threes in two lines, at three paces distant. This is preferable to stacking arms, or piling in a larger body, as it is sooner done, and the pieces stand stronger.

When the company are again ordered to parade, they must be careful to take their places as they were before, without their arms, until the order is given—

Attention—Handle arms.

When the pieces are again taken, and the standing position resumed. Then order—

Shoulder Arms—Rear rank take close order—March.

Digitized by Google

FUNERAL EXERCISE.

To the Manual and Platoon Exercise, as explained in the Drill, may be added, the Funeral Exercise, as follows:

The company standing at shouldered arms, with bayonets unfixed, the captain orders—

Reverse—arms. Two motions.

35. 1. Seize the piece with the right hand above the shoulder, back of the hand to the rear; bring down the muzzle of the piece in front towards the ground; turn the barrel up; carry the piece with the right hand under the left arm; at the same time slip down the left hand to the small stock, muzzle to the rear, pointing towards the ground.

2. Let go the right hand, support the piece with the left hand and arm; carry the right hand to the rear, and seize the barrel, back of the hand down. Support the piece in this manner, with the left hand round the small stock, and the right across the back.

Rest on arms reversed. Two motions.

36. 1. Let go the right hand; let the piece swing to the front, while suspended by the left hand, receive it at the swell with the right; place the muzzle on the left foot, lock to the front.

2. Place the hands on the butt, the right over the left; recline the head, and fix the eyes stedfastly on the ground.

Attention.

37. At this word, raise the head and fix the eyes, as in the first attitude of the soldier.

Shoulder—Arms. Two motions.

38. 1. Drop the right hand and seize the piece at the swell in rear, back of the hand to the rear, the

Digitized by Google

lower edge of the hand up; turn the muzzle upwards to the front, the butt turning in the left hand; place it at the shoulder.

2. Drop the right hand to the right side.

MANUAL EXERCISE OF NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS.

The non-commissioned officers, as also all men of the battalion, when under arms, should have their bayonets fixed.

The sergeants and corporals attached to the guard of the colours, and those that may have charge of a relief of sentinels, or when conducting the head of a body of men, will carry their muskets at the advance, from which position the exercise is to commence: but when in the ranks, the corporals use their muskets the same as the privates.

Present—Arms. One motion.

89. Carry the piece with the right hand perpendicularly opposite the left eye, the ramrod to the front; seize it with the left hand at the swell; and shift the fingers of the right hand in front of the small stock, and the thumb in rear; and hold the piece the same as described in the Manual Exercise, Part I. No. 43.

Advance—Arms. Two motions.

90. 1. Carry the piece to the right side, shifting the fingers of the right hand in rear, excepting the first, which, with the thumb, are to be in front. Strike the piece up to the shoulder with the left hand.

2. Let the left hand fall to the left side.

Order—Arms. Three motions.

91. 1. Seize the piece with the left hand above the swell.

2. Quit the hold o the lock with the right hand, and seize the piece just under the left.

Digitized by Google

3. Carry the piece to the ground by straightening the right arm, and drop the left hand, and hold the piece the same as described in Part I. No. 41.

Advance—Arms. Three motions.

92. 1. Raise the piece with the right hand perpendicularly, the height of the advance, and seize it with the left below the right.

2. Drop the right hand to the lock.

3. Drop the left hand to the left side.

Support—Arms. Three motions.

93. 1. Spring the piece to the present.

2. Turn round the musket with the right hand, barrel to the front, and slip the hand four inches below the lock, carrying it to the left shoulder; at the same time bring the left arm across the body under the lock, resting the lock on the arm.

3. Let the right hand fall to the right side.

Advance—Arms. Three motions.

94. 1. Seize the piece with the right hand under the left arm.

2. Carry the piece to the right side to the advance, with the right hand, and seize it with the left, square across the body.

3. Bring the left hand to its position.

NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS' SALUTE, PAID IN THE STANDING AND PASSING REVIEWS, OR WHEN MAKING A VERBAL REPORT, OR RECEIVING AN ORDER FROM AN OFFICER.

Salute. Two motions.

95. 1. Bring the left hand smartly against the musket a little below the shoulder, the arm close to the body, keeping it there until the person saluted shall have past two paces; or if making a report, or receiving an order, until either be finished.

Digitized by Google

2. Bring down the left hand to its place.

FIRING AT A TARGET.

To accomplish this essential object of aiming well, and firing accurately the following means must be used.

A target must be provided for each company, five feet and ten inches high, by twenty inches in breadth. They must be marked by three stripes, four inches broad, drawn horizontally across the target, and of a striking colour; one stripe across the top, another across the middle, and the third equally distant from the top and middle of the target.

The soldier must be practised in firing at this object, at the distances of between sixty and three hundred yards, aiming at different heights according to the distances. The men must fire one by one, at first, without the word, and ascertain, if practicable, whether they aim too high, or too low; and when they have acquired the habit of aiming accurately, they fire by word of command.

This method I have practised, and esteem it of essential service; it being so common a fault for companies to fire without any object to fire at, that unless something of this kind be adopted, the object of using powder for instruction, will be lost.

I would here suggest to the public, the propriety that the State, or each town individually, should defray the expense of the companies being thus trained to the use of arms. The additional expense of powder and ball would be but trifling; but what would be most conducive to the object of correct firing, would be to grant a trifling premium to two or three of the best shot made on days of exercise.

SALUTE BY THE COLOURS.

In the ranks, whether halted or marching, the

Digitized by Google

bearer of the colours should always bear the bottom of the staff against the right haunch. When within six paces of the person to be saluted, sink down gently the staff, without moving the bottom of the staff from the haunch, to within six inches of the ground, on an angle of 45 degrees between a right line and a front line; facing stedfastly in the same direction as before saluting. And when the officer saluted, shall have passed, or been passed, two paces, carry the staff gently and slowly to the front, raising it at the same time to its proper place, leaning somewhat to the right.

SWORD MANUAL OF THE OFFICERS.

When the officers are to draw the sword out of the line, and independent of each other, and without the word, it will not be necessary for them to be particular as to the several motions in which it is performed; but they should understand the exercise, so that they may do it with ease and in a graceful manner.

On days allotted for the exercise of officers, the colonel should form the officers in one rank, at the distance of half arm's length from each other, and perform the exercise in the following manner.

Attention—Handle—Swords. One motion.

96. Upon the word *swords* being given, direct the eyes to the sword hilt, bringing the right hand with a brisk action across the body, and seize the hilt; at the same time seize the scabbard with the left hand; draw the sword about four inches, and wait in that position for the next word of command.

Draw—Swords. Two motions.

97. 1. Draw the sword from the scabbard with a full extended arm, at the same time give it a turn to

Digitized by Google

the front; then bring the hilt of the sword immediately under the chin, and the back of the hand outward; the edge of the sword to the left, and the flat of the blade to the front.

2. Bring the hilt down just above the hip, the elbow near the body, the blade perpendicular, and the wrist in a small degree rounded, which turns the edge inwards, and constitutes what is called the *carry*.

This is the position of the sword previous to a salute.

Poise—Sword. One motion.

98. The sword is raised with a slow and equal motion, the guard to the height of the chin; holding it as in the first motion of *draw swords*.

Carry—swords. One motion.

99. Drop the sword to the position of the carry, as before.

Port—Swords. One motion.

100. Drop the back of the sword between the thumb and fore-finger of the left hand, holding the blade diagonally across the body, with the edge up, and hilt in front of the right haunch.

The sword is sometimes brought to this position previous to a salute, according to the direction of the commanding officer.

Carry—Swords. One motion.

101. The sword is raised and brought to the carry, and the left hand dropped to its place.

Slope—Swords. One motion.

102. Relax the three last fingers of the right hand, and let the sword drop on the right shoulder, the

Digitized by Google

edge square to the front, the hand carried a little forward.

Carry—Swords. One motion.

103. Clinch the hilt of the sword with the right hand, and come to the position of carry sword as before directed.

Reverse—Swords. One motion.

104. Carry the sword-hand a trifle to the front; drop the sword to the front; turn the back of the hand down; hold the hilt of the sword between the thumb and fore-finger; turn the blade near the body, the elbow close to the side; raising it again perpendicular, and drop it to the front, and turn it under the right arm, with the edge up, and point to the rear a little sloped; the hand the underside of the hilt, the end of the fingers above.

This motion appears formidable and intricate on paper, and may be objected to on that account; but it may be performed with ease and alacrity. This is a very handsome motion, and tends greatly to suppling the wrist, and to attain the use of the weapon.

Carry—Swords. One motion.

105. This is done by relaxing the elbow which holds the sword, and let it drop to the front, and turn the sword in the hand, and bring it to the carry.

Salute. Four motions.

106. 1. Bring the sword to the poise.

2. Drop the sword 45 degress to the front of a right line; the arm straight; the hand as low as the hip; the point of the sword a little below a line of the arm; the eyes fixed on the officer saluted, and the fingers relaxed, holding the sword with the thumb.

3. Turn the back of the hand up; at the same

Digitized by Google

time bring the point of the sword in front; give it a turn to the left, and with a graceful motion bring the hilt to the chin, as in the first motion.

4. Drop the sword to the carry.

OF PRESENTING SWORDS.

This is made use of in delivering the sword to the officer for inspection, and is differently understood by different officers.

One method in which it is performed, and which is proper, on particular occasions, is this: The officer having the sword at the carry, brings it to the poise, then steps to the front with the right foot, and drops the point to the front, turning the hilt in the hand, and holds the sword perpendicular by the guard, with the arm straight, the hilt to the front, and the edge to the rear.

It may be returned in the same way. The officer who receives it stands fast; receiving it with the right hand, little finger up, and raises the point and brings the sword to the poise, then to the carry. This is a motion of show, and requires considerable time; but in the inspection it is necessary to adopt the shortest and simplest motion possible, as the officer has not time for formalities with each.

The modes practised by the officers in delivering their swords for inspection, are as various as the companies to which they belong; and no small embarrassment is thereby occasioned to the inspector.—As there is no motion of this kind adopted by the War Regulations, I would respectfully recommend the following:

Present—Swords. One motion.

107. Bring the sword in front of the body with the right hand, and receive the edge of the blade

Digitized by Google

with the thumb and fore finger of the left hand, six inches from the hilt; and extend the arm to the front with a quick motion, edge to the rear, and the hilt the height of the breast.

This is a short and simple motion, and will in no-wise embarrass the least experienced officer. As this is not intended for a motion of show, the most simple, therefore, I think to be the best.

Advance—Swords. Two motions.

108. 1. Bring the fingers of the left hand on the blade in the hollow of the right shoulder, and shift the fingers of the right hand from the hilt round the guard; the first finger in front of the hilt, and the remainder in rear; the thumb above the guard.

2. Extend the right arm full length, and carry the sword at ease, lying against the right shoulder, and the left hand dropped to the left side.

This is the usual manner of carrying the sword, either in or out of the ranks; but it must be brought to the *carry* or *port*, previous to a salute. The greatest objection to this position of carrying the sword is, that the officer will be inclined to swing his sword-arm on the march, having nothing to confine it, which must however be carefully avoided, as likewise that of the left.

Carry—Swords. Two motions.

109. 1. Raise the sword to the position of the carry with the right hand, and seize the blade with the left; then shift the fingers of the right hand round the hilt.

2. Drop the left hand.

When the motions of *advance* and *carry* are performed on the march without the word, it may be done in one motion, with the right hand, without bringing up the left. But when performed by word

Digitized by Google

of command it should always be done with two motions.

TO RETURN SWORDS.

The swords being at the carry, the word is given—

Enter—Swords. One motion.

110. Seize the scabbard with the left hand; raise the hilt of the sword and enter the point, returning it so far as to bring the right hand even with the left breast, then wait for the next word.

Return—Swords. One motion.

111. Thrust the sword home, and drop the hands to their proper places.

OF THE INSPECTION OF ARMS.

The men being at ordered arms, and bayonets unfixed, will receive the word—

Prepare for Inspection.

112. At which order they will place their pieces between their feet, with the right hand, and seize them with the left at the centre pipe; seize the bayonet with the right hand, draw it and fix it at the muzzle. Then draw the ramrod, enter it into the barrel, and carry their pieces again to the right side with the right hand, and stand at the order.—If the bayonets are *fixed*, and ramrods only are to be drawn, the word is the same, and the motions are the same, except drawing and fixing the bayonets. If the pieces are at the shoulder, and bayonets *unfixed*, the word of command is the same, but the motions are done as follows:

113. Incline the piece to the front, balancing it

Digitized by Google

on the left hand, then drop it, and catch it with the left hand at the middle pipe; draw the bayonet as before, fix it to the muzzle; then draw the ramrod and enter it into the barrel, and bring the piece again to the shoulder. If the bayonets are *fixed*, the pieces are catched in the same way, the ramrod drawn and entered, and the pieces again shouldered.

The pieces are brought to the order previous to the inspection. This is the order in which they stand in the *War Regulations*. It has generally been practised to stand with shouldered arms during the inspection, but I prefer standing at the *order;* as the inspection is generally so long, I have found it difficult, and fatiguing to the men, to keep them at the shoulder.

Almost every inspector in the State practises a different mode of inspection, and no small embarrassment is thereby occasioned to officers and privates. It therefore becomes necessary that a uniform system be established, that the officers may have an opportunity to instruct their men in the motions to be practised in the inspection; which is as follows:

114. Each soldier, as the inspector advances, should raise, or recover his musket smartly with his right hand, and seize it with the left hand between the tail pipe and feather-spring; the lock being outwards; the left hand as high as the chin; and immediately extend the left arm, with the musket towards the officer inspecting; who receives it with his right hand at the small-stock, and after having inspected it, returns it to the soldier, with the breech of the piece by the right foot, who will also receive it with the right hand, and replace it in the position of *order arms*. When the inspector has passed a short distance, the private will, without the word, return his ramrod, half-cock his piece, shut pan, and

Digitized by Google

again resume the position of ordered arms, without unfixing bayonet.

After firing, the officer frequently wishes to inspect the arms, to ascertain if they are all discharged; which may be done in the following manner, the pieces being at the shoulder:

Spring—Ramrods.

115. At this word the musket is catched with the right hand, the same as in No. 113, and the ramrod drawn and entered, and the piece brought again to the shoulder. This will enable the officer to judge, by the length of the ramrod, if there be any piece that is not discharged; and if there be any one whose piece is not, he will order him out of the ranks to discharge it, before any further exercise.

Digitized by Google

MILITIA TACTICS.

PART III.

DISCIPLINE AND EXERCISE OF A REGIMENT, WITH THE REVIEW AND INSPECTION.

TO PARADE A REGIMENT, PLANT THE COLOURS, AND PASS THE REVIEW.

No. 1. WHATEVER may be the situation of a brigade, in the order of battle, or line, the older of the two regiments of which it is composed, should be formed on the right, and the younger on the left.

By a late law of Congress, our regiments, as organized at present, constitute but one battalion in the field, and will be known in the succeeding work by that denomination only, in the exercise and movements.

The replacing of officers in each company, and also of non-commissioned officers, will be regulated by rank; that is, if the lieutenant should be absent, the ensign takes his place; if the captain be absent, the lieutenant may take his place; but in the absence of the captain, and also of the lieutenant from a company, the commander of the regiment, should he deem it necessary, may detach a lieutenant from another company, to command the one deficient.

Digitized by Google

2. The battalion, consisting of eight battalion companies, and two of light-infantry, will be arranged as follows: the companies taking rank in line according to dates of the captains' commission to which they belong, as in this Table.

Oldest Light-Infantry Captain, and Company.	Light-Infantry.	
1st. Oldest Battalion Captain, and Company.	1st grand division.	Right Wing.
2d. Fifth Battalion Captain, and Company.		
3d. Third Battalion Captain, and Company.	2d grand division.	
4th. Seventh Battalion Capt. and Company.		
5th. Second Battalion Captain, and Company.	3d grand division.	Left Wing.
6th. Sixth Battalion Captain, and Company.		
7th. Fourth Battalion Captain, and Company.	4th grand division.	
8th. Eighth Battalion Captain, and Company.		
Youngest Light-Infantry Captain, and Company.	Light-Infantry.	

If a company are without a captain, then they are to be considered lowest in rank; and when more than one company are destitute of a captain, then their rank is to be determined by the dates of the commissions of the officers commanding.

3. As soon as the companies are formed in line, the battalion companies will be numbered from right to left in the above order. This numbering, it must be remembered, has no reference to the present number of companies in regiments or battalions; it being only to distinguish them in movements.

4. In the War Regulations, both light-infantry companies are posted on the right, and form a grand division of light-infantry, and are a part of the right

Digitized by Google

wing, and are equalized with the battalion companies, which gives six companies to the right wing, and four to the left. But it is there allowed that a different disposition may be made of them when performing the duty of light-infantry; but I have preferred posting them on the right and left and in one rank, for various reasons.

In the regular service, two battalion companies are detached to perform the duty of light-infantry; which will, with propriety, admit of their being arranged with the other battalion companies. But in the *militia*, the light-infantry companies are enlisted for that purpose, and have a uniform peculiar to themselves, and consider themselves entitled to the privilege of light-infantry, and should serve as a guard on both flanks of the battalion. This position is likewise preferred because it has been a long established custom, and with which they are all acquainted. And it is found more convenient in the evolutions, to have an equal number of companies in each wing.

5. Each captain will remain with his company, as near as practicable, with his subalterns. Every company will be divided into two equal parts, denominated right and left platoons; the captain taking command of the right platoon, and the lieutenant the left. Each platoon will be divided into two sections of equal size, and be denominated, commencing on the right of the company, *first*, *second*, *third*, and *fourth*. Every company, whatever may be its place in line, must be formed of men, sized from the flanks to the centre. When formed in two ranks, one half consisting of the shortest men, will form the front rank; the remainder the rear rank. The battalion companies must always be equalized by assigning over men, if necessary, from one company to another.

Digitized by Google

It has been practised in most regiments to form the line, and wheel into column of companies, previous to inspection. This, in the regular service, and when the companies are all ready to form at the same time, is a proper mode; but when they are paraded at different hours, (as is generally the case in the militia,) much time is lost by delaying the inspection until the line is formed. And indeed I can see no necessity of forming the line before inspection; admitting the companies were all ready at the same time. The method I would here propose, would be to inspect first, the company first paraded and in readiness; and so in succession. The colonel will follow the inspector, and exercise the companies, and give them directions respecting the exercise of the day.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE ADJUTANT IN PARADING THE BATTALION.

6. The adjutant should, at all times, provide himself with a *roster* of the battalion, containing the dates of all the officers' commissions in the battalion. And having received the morning report of each company, will ascertain the number of files which are to constitute the battalion, and the average number for each company, exclusive of the light-infantry. And should there be odd files, they should be added to the right and left companies, until the whole be taken up; leaving a deficiency of three files in the left company of the right wing, for the colours and their guard.

The adjutant will first inquire of the colonel if a parade guard are to be detached; if so, the number required must be omitted in dividing the quota of files for each company; and three corporals for the colour guard. After having ascertained the

Digitized by Google

number of files for each company, and the post of each in line, the adjutant will proceed to note on paper the position of each company, and the number of files it is to contain, and the number of each platoon and grand division in the battalion, in the following manner.

TABLE

SHOWING THE POSITION OF COMPANIES IN LINE, AND THE NUMBER OF FILES FOR EACH.

Capt. A— First Light-Infantry company, on the right of the Battalion.	Capt. E— 3d Battalion company, on the right of the 2d grand division, right wing; 5th and 6th platoons, 24 files, 3d company of the line.	Capt. H—6th Battalion company, on the left of the 3d grand division, left wing; 11th and 12th platoons, 24 files, 6th company of the line.
Capt. B— 2d Lt. Infantry company, on the left of the Battalion.	Capt. F—4th Battalion company, on the right of the 4th grand division, left wing; 13th and 14th platoons, 24 files, 7th company of the line.	Capt. I— 7th Battalion company, on the left of the 2d grand division, right wing; 7th and 8th platoons, 21 files, 4th company of the line.
Capt. C— 1st Battalion company, on the right of the 1st grand division, right wing; 1st and 2d platoons, 24 files, 1st company of the line.	Capt. G—5th Battalion company, on the left of the first grand division, right wing; 3d and 4th platoons, 24 files, 2d company of the line.	Capt. J— 8th Battalion company, on the left of the fourth grand division, left wing; 15th and 16th platoons, 24 files, 8th company of the line.
Capt. D— 2d Battalion company, on the right of the 3d grand division, left wing; 9th and 10th platoons, 24 files, 5th company of the line.	*N. B. These tickets each officer will carry upon his sleeve.*	

7. This supposes the battalion to consist of one hundred and eighty-nine files, exclusive of those detached for guard, and for standard bearers. In ascertaining the number of files, the corporals and pri-

Digitized by Google

vates only are to be counted, exclusive of those detached for guard. The foregoing tickets for the captains may be made out previous to days of review, leaving blank the number of files for each; this would lessen the duty of the adjutant on field days.

8. The adjutant, after having made these arrangements, and prepared the tickets for each captain, will proceed to detach the parade guard, with a sergeant to command them; and likewise two experienced sergeants to carry the standards, with one other sergeant, to march between them in the front rank; and three corporals to cover them in the rear rank.

9. This to be done while the inspection is performing; and the tickets distributed to the officers, and directions given them respecting the time and manner of forming the line; in which the other staff officers will assist.

10. By the time the inspection is completed, the music will be assembled on the right of parade, and ordered to beat the long roll from right to left, and from left to right. They will then commence playing quick time; at which the companies will march to their respective places in line. Each captain, as soon as his company are wheeled into line, will bring them to an order, then order all those detached from his company, to the right of the battalion; where they will be formed in line, between the light-infantry and the right of the battalion; and receive their instructions from the adjutant. The companies will wheel into line in close order, leaving a vacancy between the wings of four paces, for the colours and their guard.

11. The captains must then see that the line is dressed, and that the corporals are in the ranks, and the sergeants all two paces to the rear, until the

Digitized by Google

companies are equalized. The corporals, although they may be on the flanks of the companies, must not be assigned over to any other company to which they do not belong. The adjutant will then give the order.

Battalion—Attention—Shoulder arms.*

Captains—Equalize your companies—Commencing right and left of the battalion.

12. When each captain on the right and left will count off the number of files required for his company. The two next captains will then proceed in like manner as expeditiously as possible; so on in succession to the centre. Should there be any mistake in the morning reports, and there be more or less files remaining in the two centre companies than required, they must be taken from, or added to the other companies on their right and left. The captains then proceed to divide their companies into platoons and sections, and assign posts for their non-commissioned officers, and all assume them as directed in the Table. Whatever number of files may be added, or taken from a company by equalizing, each captain is to retain his own officers, and not to assign them to any other company, unless an order from the colonel. Each captain is to command his own men as much as practicable; the lieutenant the second platoon.

13. While the captains are dividing their companies, and posting their officers, the quarter-master and sergeant-major will assist them, and see that there be no mistake, and that the officers all have their proper places.

* When the first order is given to *shoulder arms* after the line is formed, or at any time after the battalion are ordered to *stand at ease*, the company officers draw their swords.

Digitized by Google

14. At this time, if there be a parade guard, they will be stationed by the adjutant, and the major will appear on parade and take command, until the standards are brought and planted; which will be done in the following manner.

15. The adjutant, after having given directions to the parade guard, will take one of the two light-infantry companies, in its turn of duty, with one music major, and a select number of other music, and the band, if there be one, with the sergeants designed to carry the colours, and march in open column with supported arms, without music; the two sergeants appointed for carrying the colours, march abreast in the centre of the company. When arrived in front of the colonel's quarters, the company form in line opposite the entrance, with the music on the right. As soon as the company form line, the two sergeants who are to carry the colours, will proceed to receive them from the colonel, (with instructions for carrying them,) accompanied by the adjutant.

16. When the two sergeants come out with the colours, followed by the adjutant, they will halt before the door or gate, and at this instant the officer commanding the party, will order *present arms*, and the drums will beat the troop. The band, if present, will then play a march; the sergeants in the mean time will take their places in front of the centre of the party. The captain then orders—

Shoulder—Arms—Platoons—On the left—Backward wheel—March.

17. The bearers of colours then take their places in the centre, in the order in which they are to march in line. The adjutant will take post at their head, and conduct them back to their place in line, in common time, music playing. If the company are

Digitized by Google

from the right, they will arrive on the right; but if from the left, they will arrive on the left, and wheel into line. The sergeants with the colours will wheel out of the column by a caution from the adjutant, and pass ten paces in front of the line, and halt opposite the centre of the battalion, and facing towards it; and the music of the escort will cease playing as soon as the standards wheel out. As soon as the sergeants wheel out of column, the major or lieutenant-colonel, having previously taken a post six paces in front of the line, will order the battalion to *present arms;* and the music which have remained on parade, under the direction of one of the music majors, will immediately give the salute, and afterward commence playing quick time, which they continue till the standard bearers have taken their places in line. The field officer, after having given the order to *present arms*, will wheel about, and when the sergeants halt in front of him, he will immediately salute with the sword, then direct the bearers to take their posts in line, when the music will cease, and the battalion again brought to the shoulder.

The sergeants of the colour-guard, and the corporals designed for the guard, will have been previously posted in their places ready for the colours. If the party who escort the colours arrive on the left, then the musicians of the escort will pass in rear of the line to their places on the right without, and playing.

The field officer will then bring the battalion to an *order*, and direct them to stand at *ease*, until he discovers the approach of the colonel to take command; when he will again call them to order and *shoulder arms*. The adjutant will then inform the colonel that the battalion are paraded, and ready to receive him; and will accompany him and the

Digitized by Google

lieutenant-colonel on parade, and take his proper post in line.

DIRECTORS OR MARKERS, THEIR USE AND DUTY.

As the militia in this State have never been in the habit of using *directors* or *markers*, it is thought to be of sufficient consequence to give a separate article on this subject.

In the United States' infantry, each company have two markers, generally the two oldest sergeants; but much loss of time is occasioned by using them in companies; and where the bodies of men to be exercised are small, and they have any knowledge of dressing, it is not necessary. But it becomes of the utmost importance in battalion movements in line; and as they are to be used in battalions only, I have thought best to treat of it in this place.

It is practised in some battalions in this State at the present day, to make use of two markers, posted one on each flank of the battalion. But this I find to be of little service in dressing a line, as no one can dress by one object. There should, therefore, be three markers to each battalion, which should be experienced sergeants; one taken from the first battalion company on the right, one from the company on the left, and the third from the right company of the left wing.

The design of markers is to regulate the line, and by which they always dress.

Each battalion will be provided with three flags, called *camp colours;* the staff of which should be at least nine feet in length, with a red flag at the end, two feet by three. And each staff should have a belt attached to it. (which may be buckled round the body,) with a socket to support the foot of the staff on the hip. (The standards should also be

Digitized by Google

thus provided with belts.) Those sergeants detached as markers must receive them before the line is formed, and take post with their respective companies; and when in line, one is to take post on the right of the first battalion company; one on the right of the first company of the left wing, and one on the left of the left battalion company, all in the front rank. At all times when the line is to be formed, the markers must be careful to dress by each other. The right and left will advance or retire until in line, as the centre cannot dress by the flanks.

When a new alignment is to be taken, either by an echelon movement, or by wheeling, the *markers* should be detached to establish the line previous to the formation. Two points should first be determined on, where the markers are to be stationed, the point of *appui* and *centre*. When these have taken their station, the left marker will immediately move up and dress by the other two. When the line is formed between those points, they must dress by the centre. This is necessary that each one may have two objects to dress by; without which it is extremely difficult to dress correctly.

When marching in column, the markers will march on the left flank of the platoons to which they belong, in the rear rank, if the right be in front; and on the right, if the left is in front. And the markers must at all times see that they follow in the track of each other; that is, to keep in an exact line, when marching to the front direct. And at all times, when the line or column are to be dressed by the markers, they must be careful to hold the flag-staff perpendicular on the right hip. And when the situation of the ground is such that the flag cannot be seen from the two extremes of the line, they should be raised with the right hand to the full extent of the arm; keeping it at the same time perpendicular.

Digitized by Google

THE DUTY OF THE CAPTAINS ON DAYS OF BATTALION EXERCISE.

The first duty on battalion* days, is to make a morning report of the number of men present fit for duty; and as blank reports are usually provided for each company, it is not necessary that a form should here be given. But each captain must be careful to return no more men than he is actually to have on duty; and should he by any means return more than shall appear when the line is formed, (reckoning those detached from his company,) he must, in counting the number of files for his company, take as many less as his number falls short of his morning report. And should any arrive after making his report, so that his number exceed his returns, he will, in equalizing his company, take as many more files than his prescribed number, as his number exceeds his report.

When a company is paraded and reported to the colonel, the captain will proceed to insert the names of each officer, musician, and private present, on their blank returns, in the order in which they are paraded in each rank; inserting the officers according to rank, and commencing on the right of the front rank, and on the left of the rear rank. This being completed, and each man carried out complete, the captain will inform the inspector that his company are ready for inspection, if the inspection is to be made before the line is formed.

Before the inspection commences, the captain will parade the officers on the right of the company in one line, according to rank, and see that each private is in his place, and each piece prepared for

* I here use the term battalion, instead of regiment, as ten companies are to be styled a battalion when in the field

Digitized by Google

inspection, according to prescribed rules. As soon as the inspection is completed, he may march and exercise his company, or dismiss for a few moments.

DUTY OF THE INSPECTOR.

Each inspector should acquaint himself with the particular mode of inspection, as described in No. 113. Part II. that he may be able to give instruction to the captains if needed; and if any variations are to be made from the prescribed rules, it must be previously known, that the officers may have an opportunity to instruct their men previous to the inspection. Each inspector will provide himself with a rod to ascertain the length of the barrel of each musket, to the end of which may be attached a ball to take the size of the bore.

Each inspector will have an assistant, whose duty it will be to take the length of the barrel, and size of the bore; for which purpose, the inspector, after having sufficiently examined the quality of the musket, will place it with his left hand on the ground, barrel towards the assistant, and after completing the inspection, the piece will be returned to the private by placing the breech by the right foot.

DUTY OF THE SERGEANTS WHO CARRY THE COLOURS.

The colours are at all times to be carried on the right hip; and when standing in a line they must be projected to the front, to prevent obstructing the dressing of the line by the markers. But when marching in column they should be sloped to the front and right, to prevent obstructing the dressing of the left flank. The sergeants must see that they have the step with the music, as the column must look to them for that purpose.

The formation of the battalion is generally completed, and the colours presented before marching

Digitized by Google

to the ground designed for exercise. The time which passes while marching to the parade, may be improved advantageously in attending to some of the movements which are applicable to a column of route; such as opening ranks and closing, breaking off files, breaking off sections, changing front, &c.

THE STANDING REVIEW.

The battalion, standing with ordered arms, in close order, and officers all in their places, awaits the approach of the reviewing officer. The commandant of the battalion being notified of the general's near approach, orders—

The battalion will shoulder.

The lieutenant-colonel and major immediately give the word to each wing—

Right (or left) wing—Shoulder—Arms.

The colonel then gives the caution—

The battalion will take open order.

When the commandant of each wing will give the order—

Right (or left) wing—Rear rank—Take open order—March.

At the caution to take *open order*, the sergeants, who are two paces in rear of the rear rank, will step three paces to the rear, and dress. At the word *march*, the rear rank moves by the back step three paces* in rear, and dresses by the right. The officers severally pass three paces to the front, and take their positions opposite their places in line. The sergeants who carry the colours, and the sergeant of their guard, step to the front and dress by the officers. The corporals of the colour-guard step

* Six paces must be taken to the rear, to be equal to three in front, as 14 inches is the length of a step to the rear.

Digitized by Google

to the front, and dress by the front rank. The colonel will take post six paces in front of the centre of the battalion. The lieutenant-colonel six paces in front of the centre of the right wing. The major six paces in front of the centre of the left wing. All facing to the front. The adjutant on the left of the battalion in a line with the front rank. The other staff officers on the right of the battalion, in line with the front rank, in the following order: chaplain, surgeon, quarter-master, surgeon's-mate, paymaster, and sergeant-major. The music on the right of the battalion, in two ranks, and close order with the front rank. If there be a band present, they are posted for this purpose in rear of the colours. When the reviewing officer arrives within thirty paces of the right of the battalion, the commandants of each wing (having received a caution from the colonel) will turn to the battalion and order—

Present—Arms,

And immediately turn again to the front, and at the order to *present arms*, the drums and fifes on the right give three cheers, and beat a march. The officers perform the salute with the sword, and the bearers of colours with the colours, successively, as the general arrives within six paces, according to directions in No. 106. Part II. The sergeants salute with the colours as directed under No. 95. Part II. If a band be present, the drums and fifes will cease playing as soon as the general arrives on the left of the battalion; and the band will commence, and continue to play, while the general passes in rear.

Here let it be observed and remembered, that unless an officer saluting, look firmly and steadily at the officer he salutes, while performing the motions, it ought not be considered as a salute. What is the compliment paid to your friend when you turn your

Digitized by Google

back upon him, and take off your hat in that position?

When the reviewing officer has passed the left of the battalion, the field officers will turn to the right-about, and at the caution from the colonel they will be brought to the shoulder; which, if the band be present, will be the caution for them to commence playing, and for the drums and fifes to cease; but if there be not a band, the drums and fifes will play until the general arrives again on the right. When the reviewing officer passes along the rear, every officer will stand immoveably. The soldier's discipline will here be discovered. The want of discipline will be seen in a moment, by a discerning officer. Any officer or soldier, who will turn round during this movement of the general by the rear, displays either an ignorance of the true soldier's attitude, or the want of the true soldier's spirit.

The reviewing officer having passed to the right by the rear, will move from the right, to take a position in front, in order to receive the salute while marching past in column; which is called the *passing salute.* During this time the colonel will give the caution—

Battalion will close ranks.

When the lieutenant-colonel and major will give the word according to the wings which they command—

Rear rank—Take close order—March.

On hearing the cautionary words, the officers face to the right-about; and on the word *march*, they move to their respective posts in close order; and the rear rank close to within one pace of the front. The colonel then gives the caution—

The battalion will wheel into column to pass in review.

Digitized by Google

The other field officers then give the word—

By platoons—To the right wheel—March.

When each platoon wheels independent of the other, according to the principles laid down for the company discipline and wheeling, No. 45. Part II.

Here it may be remarked, that in wheeling into column to pass in review, it is necessary to wheel forward to the right; as the right is then to become the governing flank. The colonel should give his caution to *pass in review*, so that all may hear and understand; and should there be any doubt as to this, the other field officers and adjutant must caution the captains, that they may give directions to their men, that all may understand the movement, and attend to the strictest degree of discipline. The colonel will then caution—

Column will pass in review.

At this caution, the officers take their several stations; the colonel at the head of the column four paces in advance of the first captain; the lieutenant-colonel on the left flank of the leading platoon; the major in rear of the column; the adjutant on the left flank of the rear platoon; each commandant of platoons three paces in front of the centre of their respective platoons, as in open column of march; the supernumeraries in rear of their platoons; the music immediately in front of the colonel, formed two deep. The band will march between the two wings in rear of the colours. The staff officers pass in rear of the column but do not salute. The first and second sergeants, and the markers on the right of their platoons.

This march in column to pass the review, differs from the open column of march, right in front; this being an exception to the general rule for this particular purpose. This preparation being made,

Digitized by Google

(which is quickly done after having received the caution,) the colonel orders—

Column—Forward—March.

Support—Arms.

These orders are instantly repeated by the lieutenant-colonel and major, and commandants of platoons, that no one may fail of hearing and understanding the order. The whole step off in common time, and immediately support arms.

While marching past in review, the column will wheel the quarter circle, or full wheel, four times, before it again occupies the ground on which it stood in line, when the reviewing officer first passed and received the salute; twice before the column arrives in front of the general, and twice after passing him. When the head of the column has arrived within forty paces of the reviewing general, the colonel will order it to carry arms; which order must be repeated by each platoon officer. The commandant, when he has saluted at the head of the column, places himself at the right of the general, where he remains till the rear has marched past.

The drums and fifes of the battalion will give three cheers when opposite the general, and if there be not a band present, they will wheel out of the column to the left, and wheel again a second time to the left, and front the general, and continue playing till the column have past; when they will wheel into column and follow in rear. But if the band be present, the drums and fifes will cease, and remain at the head of the column, and the band will commence playing as soon as the drums and fifes have given the cheers; and the band will wheel out of the column in front of the general, and face him the same as the other music were ordered, and continue playing till the rear of the column have past,

Digitized by Google

when they will follow without playing. At which time the drums and fifes will again commence.

When the order is given by the colonel to *carry arms*, the officers will bring their swords to a carry, and be ready to commence the salute when within six paces of the general, fixing their eyes directly upon him, and continue in that position until the third motion, when the eyes are again turned to the front, and the sword to the carry, and again to the advance. The colours remain in the ranks without saluting.

The officers on foot ought to be particularly careful not to alter the just position of the body, in passing the salute. Any rising on the toes, or twisting the body, or tossing it up, (with an expectation of performing it more gracefully,) is far from military gracefulness. Gracefulness in an officer, when paying the salute, has no relation to such motions, or to bowing the head *gently*, dropping the countenance, or respectfully bending forward the body It consists in ease, steadiness, and immoveability. Ease, as respects the motion of the arm and sword; steadiness, as respects the body generally; immoveability, as respects the head and eyes.

If other officers or gentlemen are invited to accompany the general while the troops are passing in review, they will take post on his right and a little in rear, leaving room for the colonel on the general's right, which he will occupy till the column have marched past, where he has an opportunity to observe the defects of the troops while passing, and hear any remarks which may be made concerning them by the general.

When the colonel wheels out of the column to take post with the general, the lieutenant-colonel will take post at the head of the column, and command till they again arrive on the original line. When

Digitized by Google

the rear platoon have past the general, (which will be known by the band's ceasing to play,) the lieutenant-colonel will give the word, *support arms*, which will be the signal to the other music to commence playing. If there be no band, the other music, when they wheel into column, will cease playing, till the word support arms be given, when they will again commence.

If there are several battalions, they march past, with intervals of thirty paces each. All the battalions in the column carry arms by word from their colonels, as each arrives within forty paces of the person saluted. When the rear battalion have past the general, they are again ordered to support arms. When the band of the first battalion ceases playing, that of the succeeding one will commence; and the drums and band of each succeeding battalion will proceed to occupy the situation quitted by those of the first battalion, in the manner prescribed, and will follow their rear divisions by the same rule. Brigadiers pass at the head of their brigades, four paces in front of the colonel, and the aid-de-camp on his left. If the column be composed of a considerable number of battalions, the commander can march it at ease, as a column of route. When each arrives within forty paces of the person before whom the column is passing in review, its colonel will order it to form, at closed ranks, and carry arms, and the music play common time. And as soon as past, the colonel will order it to march at ease, with the route step.

When the head of the column have made their fourth angle, and are again on the line of formation, the lieutenant-colonel will order, *markers to the left*, when they, with the other first and second sergeants, will take post on the left of their respective platoons, as that is then to be the governing flank. As soon

Digitized by Google

as the front platoon have arrived on the ground which they previously occupied, the word will be given *mark time;* when each platoon will mark time; and if any platoon have been inattentive, and lost their true wheeling distance, they will receive a second order, then regulate their wheeling distance. The officers must then see that the pivots are well dressed, while they are marking time. And the band, or the drums and fifes, will pass on the right of the column to their places on the right, or in the centre, and continue playing till the word is given, *halt.* The lieutenant-colonel then gives the order—

Column—To the left—Wheel into line—March.

The column will wheel into line on the same ground they before occupied.

Carry arms—Order arms—Stand at ease.

The general will then take some advantageous situation in front of the line, where he may witness their exercise and movements; and the colonel again takes command, when he will put them through the Manual and Platoon Exercise. The colonel will give the words of caution, and the lieutenant-colonel and major the words of command.

By the colonel.

Battalion—Attention. Shoulder—Arms.

The battalion will take open order.

The lieutenant-colonel and major will order—.

Rear rank—Take open order—March.

At this command, the rear rank steps to the rear the distance of three paces, and the commissioned officers three paces to the front, and dress in a line.

Colonel. *Battalion will perform the manual exercise.*

At this caution, the officers face to the right-about, to witness the exercise of their respective compa-

Digitized by Google

nies. The lieutenant-colonel and major then give the word to each wing, for the Manual Exercise; the particular arrangement of which will be found in Part I. No. 39. of the Drill. It is thought that any further explanation would be needless. It may however be remarked, that it is not indispensable that the words be given in the precise order in which they are there inserted. There is, however, a consistency in the order there prescribed, and no great variation should be made. The manual exercise being finished, the colonel will caution—

The battalion will perform the platoon exercise.

By the lieutenant-colonel and major,

Right (or left) wing—

Attention—Shoulder—Arms.

Rear rank—Take close order—March.

When the rear rank will resume their original position, and officers their posts, as described in line, battle order. They will then perform the platoon exercise, as described in the Drill. In the platoon exercise, the pieces should often be brought to the position of the oblique firings, to the right and to the left; and also to the front direct. The motions in the platoon exercise are to be performed without making use of powder; but at the close of the day, the battalion will be put through the firings, as hereafter described.

The manual and platoon exercise being finished, the battalion may be dismissed for a short time; and again paraded, and such part of the movements as explained in the succeeding Part, will be practised as may be requested by the general, or thought proper by the colonel.

Digitized by Google

MILITIA TACTICS.

PART IV.

COMPRISES THE MOVEMENT OF A BATTALION, AND THE FIRINGS.

MANŒUVRES.

EXPLANATION.

In the following Manœuvres, the words of command, which each officer must pronounce in order to execute the movements, are placed in *italics*, opposite the rank of the several officers, viz. The words set against "Col." are for the commanding officer of the battalion, whatever rank he may sustain. The words against "Lt. Col." are for the commandant of each wing. The words against "Captain," are for the commandants of platoons, companies, or grand divisions, as may be necessary in the movements. In all the movements the caution is to be given by the colonel, and in a voice that may be heard by the whole battalion; and in such a manner as to explain, as much as possible, the movement to be performed. But lest the caution may not be heard or understood distinctly by all, it will be necessary generally, for the commandants of wings to repeat the caution in part, previous to giving the word of command. The commandants of wings must substitute the word, *right or left*

Digitized by Google

wing, instead of *battalion*, according to their separate command.

In the following movements, the words of command are for the lieutenant-colonel who commands the right wing; the major will use the same words, substituting left wing instead of right; excepting where there is considerable variation in the words of command necessary to be applied to the left wing; in which case the words are inserted for the major also.

MANŒUVRE No. 1.

TO FORM CLOSE COLUMN ON THE RIGHT.

Col. *Battalion will form close column of platoons on the right, in rear of the right.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Form close column of platoons in rear of the right platoon—Right face—March.*

Captain. *Halt—Front—Right dress.* See Plate I. No. 1.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

At the word *right face*, they all face to the right, excepting the platoon on which the column is formed; and the captain causes two or three files on the right to break off to the rear; and the first sergeant will step in front of the leading man of the front rank, to lead them into column, the captain on his left. The lieutenant and second sergeant will step to the right of the second platoon, and break off the leading files to the rear, and be ready to lead out at the word *march*. The sergeant will pass in rear of the platoon, and take post on the right of the front rank; the lieutenant will pass in front, and

Digitized by Google

take post at his left, the same as the captain on the left of the first. The ensign will take post one pace in front of the centre of the second platoon. At the word *march*, they all step off together, and gain ground to the rear sufficient to enter the column parallel with the platoon in front, and two paces in its rear. When the leading sergeants have arrived in a right line with the platoon in front, the officer of the platoon will give the word *halt;* and after making a pause sufficient for the files to close up, (if they should have extended them in consequence of file-marching,) will give the words, *front—right dress.* The captain and lieutenant will then take post one pace in front of the centre of their platoons; the first and second sergeants on the left, the same as in open column.

All the platoons of the line will perform the movement in the same way, facing to the rear more or less according to their distance from the column; and march over the shortest possible distance to their places in column.

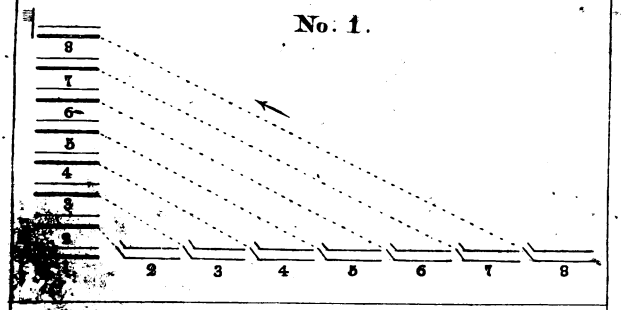
Here let it be remarked, that all the formations and deployments of the line are to be on the battalion companies, and not on the light-infantry, except designated in the order. And the first light-infantry company will form in column in front, and the second in rear of the battalion companies. The platoons of the battalion companies being numbered from right to left, the colonel may give the cautions to form column on any platoon of the line, designating the number of the platoon. Or if he wish to form on the light-infantry, the caution is given—

Battalion will form close column of platoons on the right, in rear of the light-infantry.

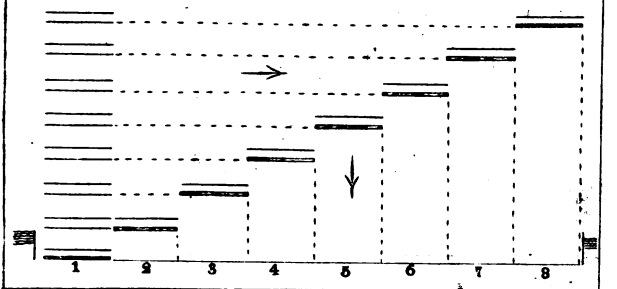
Digitized by Google

PLATE I.

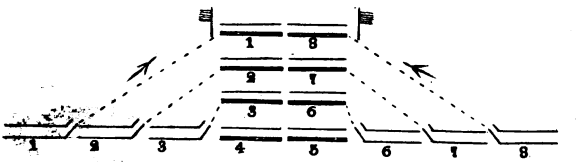
No. 1.



No. 2.

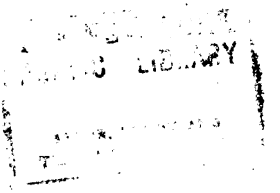


No. 3.



Front

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 2.

TO DISPLAY A CLOSE COLUMN TO THE LEFT FROM THE RIGHT.

Col. *Column will display to the left, from the right.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Display column to the left on the first platoon—Left face—March.*

Captain. *Halt—Front—Forward—Halt—Dress.* See Plate I. No. 2.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

When the order is given to display to the left, the chiefs of platoons, which being the captain and lieutenant, will immediately step to the left of their commands; and as soon as the platoons are faced to the left, they will take post on the right of the first and second sergeants; and at the word *march*, the commandants of platoons will conduct them out of the column parallel with the line, until they have gained their proper distance to form to the front; which must be ascertained by looking to the rear to see when the rear of their platoon are clear of the front of the platoon on their right. When that is the case, and each commandant sees that he is directly in rear of his position in line, he gives the words *halt—front*, with a pause between, sufficient for the files to close up and face together. The commandants of platoons then give the order *forward*, and they all step off together and feel and dress by the right, until they arrive in a line with those ready formed; when the word is given *halt—dress;* and they dress by the markers, who will have left the column on the word *march*, and having passed over the shortest possible distance to the line, have dressed by each other, according to the rule

Digitized by Google

prescribed for them in dressing. The right wing must dress by the left, and the left by the right.

When the column is formed with any probability of being displayed on the same ground, the markers, before leaving the line, would do well to make some mark on the ground, or observe some monument, that they may be enabled to take the same ground again when ordered to display. The officers of each company will take their proper places in line as soon as their company is formed and dressed.

MANŒUVRE No. 3.

TO FORM DOUBLE COLUMN OF PLATOONS ON THE CENTRE*.

Col. *Battalion will form double column of platoons on the centre, in rear of the centre.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Form close column of platoons on the eighth platoon, in rear of the eighth—Left face—March.*

Major. *Left wing—Form close column of platoons on the ninth platoon, in rear of the ninth—Right face—March.*

Captain. *Halt—Front—Dress.* See Plate I. No. 3.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

This movement is performed on the same principle of No. 1. The right wing facing to the left instead of the right, and the officers taking post in front as before. The first and second sergeants of the right wing will take post on the right flank when

* This movement, in the War Regulations, is called a column of attack. It is sometimes formed at section distance; sometimes at platoon distance; and when formed by grand divisions, at company distance.

Digitized by Google

in column; the left being in front. The platoons on which the columns are formed will at all times stand fast. The light-infantry companies of each wing will form column in rear of each, unless otherwise ordered.

MANŒUVRE No. 4.

TO DISPLAY COLUMNS TO THE RIGHT AND LEFT FROM THE CENTRE.

Col.	*Columns will display to the right and left, on the centre.*
Lt. Col.	*Right wing—Display column to the right on the front platoon—Right face—March.*
Major.	*Left wing—Display column to the left on the front platoon—Left face—March.*
Captain.	*Halt—Front—Forward—Dress.*

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

This column is displayed on the same principles of No. 2, observing to march out parallel with the line of formation, and dress by the centre.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 5.

TO FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF PLATOONS ON THE RIGHT AND LEFT OF THE BATTALION.

Col. *Battalion will form close columns of platoons in rear of the right and left flank.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Form close column of platoons on the right, in rear of the right—Right face—March.*

Major. *Left wing—Form close column of platoons on the left, in rear of the left—Left face—March.*

Captain. *Halt—Front—Dress.*

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

This movement is no way different in principle from the preceding formations; the object being more to give the proper words of command, than to explain any new movement. When the column is formed on the company or platoon next to the light-infantry, as in this case, the light-infantry will form in front of the column; but if formed on the reverse flank, they will form in rear. And when the column is displayed, they being in front, will face to the right or left, and march out their length, and face to the rear, and dress back on the original line.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 6.

TO FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF PLATOONS ON THE RIGHT, IN FRONT OF THE RIGHT.

Col. *Battalion will form close column of platoons on the right, in front of the right.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—Form close column of platoons on the right—Right in rear—Right face—March.*
Captain. *Halt—Front—Dress.* See Plate II. No. 1.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

This movement is performed the same as No. 1, excepting the sergeants will disengage two files to the front instead of the rear.

The first light-infantry company will form in rear, and the second in front of the column. The markers must be careful to dress with each other on the right flank; as that is then the governing flank, the left being in front.

MANŒUVRE No. 7.

TO DISPLAY A CLOSE COLUMN TO THE LEFT ON THE REAR.

Col. *Column will display to the left on the rear.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—Display column to the left on the rear platoon—Left face—March.*
Captain. *Halt—Front—Forward—Dress.* See Plate II. No. 2.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

On the word *march*, the directions for displaying as in No. 2, will be followed with this addition: one marker will take post on the right flank of the front platoon, where he will remain to designate the point of formation for the new line. As soon as the rear

Digitized by Google

platoon are uncovered, the commandant will order, *forward*, and immediately marches up his platoon to the left of the marker in front; halts and dresses by him. And each platoon in succession, as they are uncovered by the platoon in front, will *halt—front*, and march up and dress by the markers. As soon as the first platoon have dressed by the marker on the right, he will pass in rear of the light-infantry to the right of the first battalion company.

Observe—All columns are to be displayed so as to retain the ground already occupied. It is said by some authors, that all deployments should be made from the front division. But this would imply that the front division is to stand fast, and the column to display from them. But this would not be correct; for if they were to display in front and parallel with the original line, it would reverse the flanks. No more is therefore meant by retaining the ground, than that the line should be formed on the ground the front platoon occupies. It may be displayed on any named platoon in the column; but if that platoon be not a front one, they will immediately march to the front, and occupy the ground where the front stood.

Digitized by Google

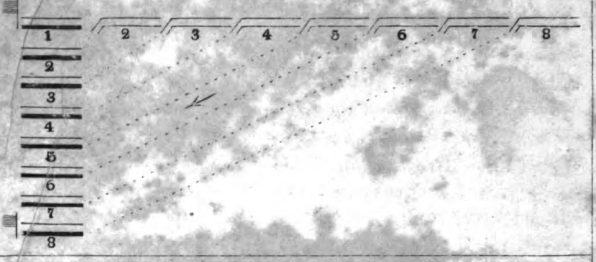
THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

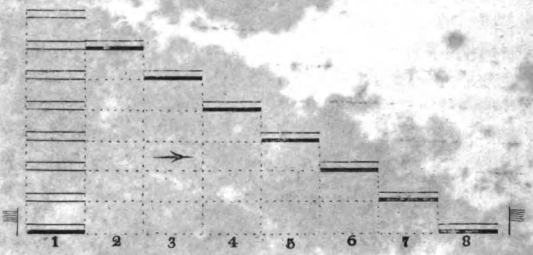
Digitized by Google

PLATE II.

No. 1.

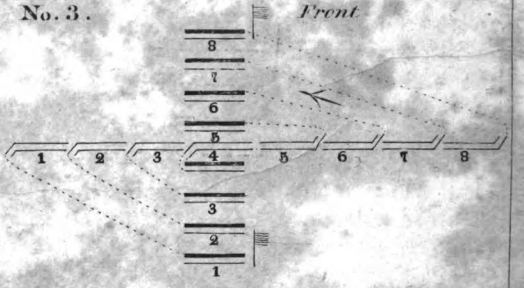


No. 2.



No. 3.

Front



Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 8.

TO FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF PLATOONS ON THE CENTRE, FACING THE REAR.

Col. *Battalion will form close column of platoons on the centre, left in rear, facing the rear.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Form close column of platoons on the eighth platoon—Left in rear, facing the rear—Right face—Countermarch to the left—March.*

Major. *Left wing—Form close column of platoons on the eighth platoon—Left in rear, facing the rear—Left face—Countermarch to the left—March.*

Captain. *Left turn—Halt—Front—Dress.* See Plate II. No. 3.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

This column is formed on the platoon named, by the wings facing outward from the centre, and each platoon countermarching to the left. The platoon on which the column is formed will countermarch on its own ground, and face to the original rear. The right wing, after forming in column, will face to the left; and the left wing to the right; that is, all face to the original rear, which will form the column left in front: and the markers take post on the right flank, as that is then to govern. This column may be displayed as Manœuvre No. 7, when the line will have made a complete change of front. Or it may be countermarched as Manœuvre No. 9, in close column, and then displayed as Manœuvre No. 2.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 9.

TO COUNTERMARCH A CLOSE COLUMN BY FILES.

Col. *Column will countermarch by files and change front.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Countermarch by files to the right and left, and change front—Right and left face—March.*

Captain. *Left (or right) turn—Halt—Right (or left) face—Dress.* See Plate III. No. 1.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

Previous to giving the command to *face*, the platoons must be instructed which are to face to the right, and which to the left, as follows: the odd platoons, Nos. 1, 3, 5, &c. will face to the right; and the even platoons, Nos. 2, 4, 6, &c. will face to the left. And at the word *march*, from the lieutenant-colonel or major, the officers commanding the odd platoons will give the word *right turn;* and those commanding the even platoons, *left turn;* and each platoon countermarches to the right and left, and forms on the ground of the platoon in rear, or nearly so. As soon as each platoon are formed in column, the officers commanding the odd platoons will give the word *left face;* and those commanding the even platoons *right face*, instead of front face; as some may mistake the front, it being changed. The whole column, by this movement, changes its front, and may be displayed according to principles already shown; or displayed so as to re-change front, as in Manœuvre No. 10.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 10.

TO DISPLAY COLUMN TO THE RIGHT, AND FACE THE REAR.

Col. *Column will display to the right on the front, facing the rear.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Display column to the right on the front platoon, facing the rear—Right face—March.*

Captain. *Left turn—Halt—Front—Dress.* See Plate III. No. 2.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

When the order is given to *march*, the captain commanding the front platoon will immediately give the word *left turn*, and countermarch his platoon, and form on the new line, which must previously be designated by the markers. All the others move at the word *march*, by files, with the right flank leading. They will incline to the left so as to pass the line to the rear, a little to the left of where the left of their platoon is to rest; then give the word *left turn*, and march up to the left of the platoon ready formed on their right, then *halt—front*, and dress forward, according to former rules. Thus the line will be formed, facing the original rear.

It is considered that enough has been said respecting the formation and deployment of close columns, to enable the officer to form or display in any situation, and on any division of his battalion; remembering, that the deployment is always to be in line with the head division of the column; and the line to extend from it to the right or left wholly, or partially to both flanks. Because, in those cases, where there may be a number of columns to display, the line would be uncertain and irregular, unless this rule is observed.

On the preceding principles, a close column may

Digitized by Google

be formed and displayed, on any named division, by platoons, companies, or grand divisions. Large bodies most commonly form column of companies, or grand divisions. The greater the extent of the division in the formation of the close column, the greater is the danger of opening the files. The lock step will then appear more important, and the observations on that subject in Part I. will then be more impressive. If it be thought expedient to form the close column of platoons into companies, it is easily effected. The left, or second platoon of each company in the column, is faced to the left, marched to the left till clear of the first platoon, then fronted and formed in line with the right, when the column must be closed. In the same manner may the close column of companies be formed into column of grand divisions, facing the left, or *even* companies of grand divisions to the left, and forming on the right companies of grand divisions.

MANŒUVRE No. 11.

TO FILE FROM THE LEFT OF PLATOONS INTO OPEN COLUMN TO THE FRONT.

Col. *Battalion will file from the left of platoons into open column to the front.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—File from the left of platoons into open column to the front—Left face—File to the front—March.*

Captain. *Right—Turn.*

Lt. Col. *Halt—Front—Face.*

Captain. *Left—Dress.* See Plate III. No. 3.

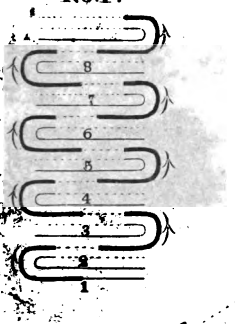
EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

At the word *left face*, by the officers of wings, they all face to the left; and the officers of platoons

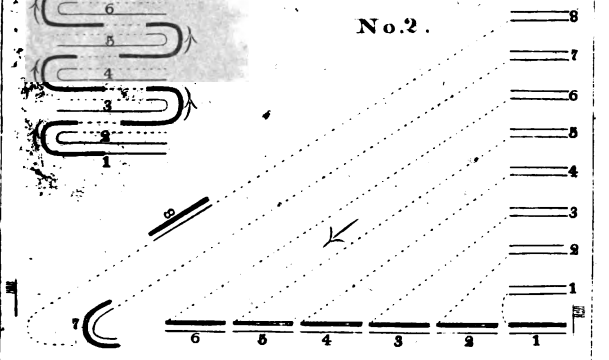
Digitized by Google

PLATE III.

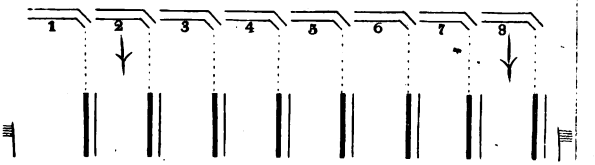
No. 1.



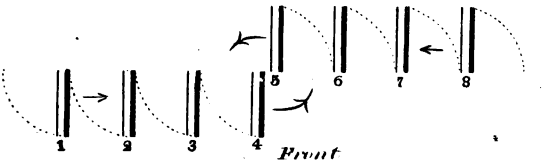
No. 2.



No. 3.



No. 4.



Front

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

Digitized by Google

step to the left of their command, in front of the left hand man of the front rank, who do not face. At the word *march*, the platoon officers give the word *right turn*, and all step off together; and the leading man of each platoon will look to the centre, and see that they are dressed with each other; and when the word is given *halt*, if the left flank be not properly dressed, they must be immediately dressed by the markers, and the files closed before fronting. At the word *front*, they all face to the right. The officers take post in front of their platoons, ready to march in column, right in front, or to wheel into line. Non-commissioned officers go to the left.

In this movement the men of the rear rank will step up briskly, after turning to the right, so as to march abreast of their file leader, and when fronted, to exactly cover them.

If this movement be performed for the purpose of instruction, and not to march in column, the music will keep their places, and play at the word *march*. But if the object be to march in column, then the music will file to the front, the same as the platoons, and form in front of the column.

MANŒUVRE No. 12.

TO WHEEL A COLUMN INTO LINE, THE RIGHT BEING IN FRONT.

Col. *Column will wheel into line.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—Left wheel into line—March.*
Captain. *Halt—Right (or left)—Dress.*

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

At the word *wheel*, the platoons will conform to direction in No. 45. Part II; and platoon officers give the word *halt*, when the wheel is completed, and see that they dress by the centre, then take their places in line.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 13.

TO FILE FROM THE LEFT OF PLATOONS INTO OPEN COLUMN TO THE REAR, TO MARCH LEFT IN FRONT.

Col.	*Battalion will file into open column of platoons to the rear, to march left in front.*
Lt. Col.	*Right wing—File from the left of platoons into open column to the rear—Left face—File to the rear—March.*
Captain.	*Left—Turn.*
Lt. Col.	*Halt—Right face.*
Captain.	*Halt—Right face—Right dress.*

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

At the word *left face*, by the officer of wings, they all face to the left; the captain will go to the left of his platoon in rear; the first sergeant to the left, passing in front of the platoon, and detach one or two files to the rear, and pass through the opening, and take post in front of the left hand man of the rear rank, who will have faced to the left-about at the word *face*, and be ready to file to the rear at the word *march*. The captain takes post on the left of the first sergeant. The lieutenant and second sergeant being on the left, will also detach one or two files to the rear, and take post the same as the captain and first sergeant. At the word *march*, the officers of platoons give the word *left turn*, and all step off together. The front rank men will step up briskly, and march abreast of the rear rank men. The supernumerary officers who are in rear of the line, must be careful to keep on the left of the files whom they cover in line. At the word *halt*, by the field officer, the platoon officers will quickly see that their files are closed. The word is then given by the

Digitized by Google

officers of wings, *right face*, instead of front face; as troops unaccustomed to this movement might take the front to mean the original front; which order is also repeated by the commandants of platoons, and also *right dress*. If the movement has been correctly executed, they will have retained the exact wheeling distance. The column will now stand left in front, and the first and second sergeants will take post on the right flank at the word *right dress*.

MANŒUVRE No. 14.

TO FILE FROM THE RIGHT OF PLATOONS TO THE REAR.

Col.	*Battalion will file from the right of platoons to the rear.*
Lt. Col.	*Right wing—File from the right of platoons into open column to the rear—Right face—File to the rear—March.*
Captain.	*Right—Turn.*
Lt. Col.	*Halt—Front.*
Captain.	*Halt—Front face—Left dress.*

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

The same rules are to be observed in filing from the right to the rear, as from the left; substituting right for left. This movement, however, and the one preceding, is seldom, if ever performed for the purpose of marching in column, unless the situation of the ground will not admit of their filing to the front, for this reason: All filing into column should be from that flank which is to govern on the march, or what is usually termed the *pivot flank*. And as that is the left when the right is in front, the line will always file from that flank to the front to march right in front; and form the right to the front, when to

Digitized by Google

march left in front, if the ground and circumstances will admit.

Filing into column is, by some, deemed preferable to wheeling; but unless troops have a correct knowledge of the flank step, it will be attended with considerable difficulty, as files will consequently open, and much time will be lost in closing. But filing into column should be often practised by companies in battalions, to the front and to the rear, as it may at times become necessary. Officers must always be careful, when filing from the right to the front, to face to the left, and the reverse when filing from the left to the front. And when filing to the rear from the right, they face to the left, and to the right when filing from the left: or, in other words, face at all times so as to retain the rear rank.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 15.

TO CHANGE THE FRONT OF A BATTALION WHEN IN LINE.

Col. *Battalion will change front by platoons on the centre.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Change front by platoons on the centre of the battalion—By platoons to the left wheel—March. Column—Forward—March.*

Captain. *Left wheel into line. Halt—Left dress.*

Major. *Left wing—Change front by platoons on the centre of the battalion—Right-about face—To the left wheel—March. Column, forward—March.*

Captain. *Left wheel into line—Halt—Right-about face—Right dress.* See Plate III. No. 4.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

This movement is performed on the same principle as that of changing front of a company by sections, described in No. 43. Part II. The left wing is faced about, and both wings wheeled to the left or inwards; and the right wing will be in front of the line, and the left wing in rear of the line; both being in column. At the word *march*, the two centre platoons wheel again to the left, and form on the original line. The other platoons pass in rear of those ready formed, and wheel into line, by order of the platoon officer as soon as their left flank is uncovered, or passed those ready formed in line. Platoon officers of the left wing will front their platoons successively as they wheel into line, before they give the order to dress.

This is an important and useful movement; it operates like a wheel of the whole body on the centre. The formation of the line being successive, a fire may be immediately begun, by those first formed, to repel an enemy attacking in rear.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 16.

TO CHANGE FRONT OF A LINE ON THE CENTRE OF WINGS.

Col. *Battalion will change front, by platoons on the centre of wings.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Countermarch by platoons on the centre, and change front. Second grand division—Right about face—Platoons, inward wheel—March. Column, forward—March.*

Captain. *Left wheel into line—Halt—Right-about face—Right (or left) dress.*

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

This movement is performed on the same principle of the preceding No. by wheeling on the centre of each wing, instead of the centre of the battalion. The major will face the fourth grand division to the rear; then wheel to the centre, as explained in the preceding movement. The platoon officers of the second and fourth grand divisions only, will give the word *right-about face*, after wheeling into line. And the officers of the right wing will give the word *right dress;* and those of the left wing *left dress.* This movement will reverse the order of the wings; the right wing being on the left, and the left on the right. The light-infantry will remain in their places, and change front on their own ground, the music will take post in rear of the centre of the battalion.

The front may be re-changed in the same way, or they may be wheeled into column, with the left wing in front, and the music in the centre, and reverse their order on the march, as in the following movement.

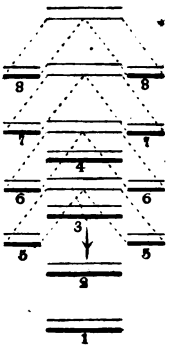
Digitized by Google

THE NEW
PUBLIC LIB
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

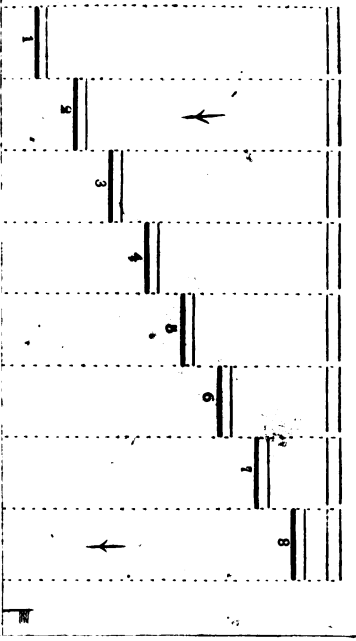
Digitized by Google

PLATE IV.

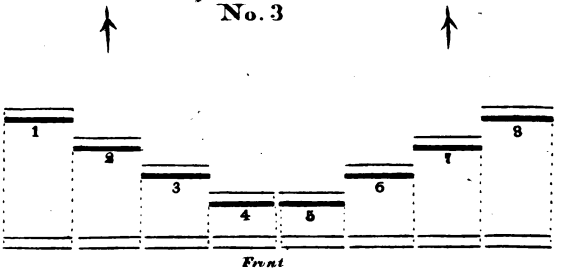
No. 1.



No. 2.



No. 3



Front

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 17.

TO REVERSE THE WINGS WHILE ON THE MARCH IN COLUMN.

Col. *Battalion will reverse the wings, right to the front.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Mark time.*

Major. *Left wing—From the centre of platoons to the right and left oblique—March—Mark time.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Forward—March.*

Major. *Left wing—Form Platoons—March.*

Captain. *Right and left oblique—Forward.* See Plate IV. No. 1.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

When performing movements in column, the colonel will have a concerted signal for the music to cease playing, and beat time, that the word of command may be heard. An officer should never attempt a movement without it; and the music-majors will occasionally turn their eyes on the commanding officer, to watch the signal.—When the colonel has given the signal for the music to beat time, he will give the caution for the movement as above; and the lieutenant colonel will immediately give the word to the right wing to *mark time.* The major who commands the front wing, will give the word to *oblique to the right and left;* and each platoon opens from the centre by the oblique step, until the opening is full equal to the length of a platoon, when they mark time by the order of the major. At which time the lieutenant-colonel will give the order to the right wing to *march*, and they move on through the vacancy in the centre of the left wing, led by the music; and as soon as the rear platoon are clear of the front of the left wing, the major orders, *form platoons*, and the platoon officers give the word to their sections to oblique to the right and left, and

Digitized by Google

they incline to the centre and re-form the platoons; when the word is given, *forward*, and all move off in open column in rear of the right wing.

The light-infantry of the left wing will remain on the flanks until the column have marched past; they then form column and follow in rear. The light-infantry of the right wing will follow in rear of the column until past the left wing, when they will file out to the right and march in quick time, and take post in front.

ECHELON MOVEMENTS.

Echelon, the particular definition of which may be found in No. 12. Part I. and a detail of the different echelon movements and their use under No. 67. Part II. The echelon movements are of two kinds, direct and indirect. The former of which must be either to the front or rear of the old line, and formed parallel. The latter is a diagonal position, which, in the War Regulations, is uniformly called "change of front;" the impropriety of which, (in the view of the author,) you will find in Part II. under No. 42. See *Remarks*.

MANŒUVRE No. 18.

TO MARCH IN ECHELON TO FORM A LINE TO THE FRONT.

Col. *Battalion will advance in direct echelon of platoons, from the right.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—By platoons—From the right, in succession, at wheeling distance—March.*

Captain. *Forward.*

Col. *Echelon—Form a line.*

Lt. Col. *First platoon—Halt.*

Captain. *Halt—Right dress.* See Plate IV. No. 2.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

This is the echelon direct; the object being to form a line to the front, parallel with the old line.

Digitized by Google

The colonel having fixed on some object in front for the government of the new line, or having posted his markers, gives the caution which flank is to commence the movement, and the size of the divisions by which they are to march. The lieutenant-colonel will then give the command to the right wing, and designate the distance the platoons are to march from each other, which is left to his judgment, unless the colonel in the caution should prescribe the distance. It may be at wheeling distance, half wheeling distance, or two or more paces, according to circumstances. When the order is given to march, the officer commanding the first platoon will give the word *forward*, and take some object, and march square to the front, and not incline to the right nor left. When the officers perceive that the preceding platoons have advanced the distance required, they instantly give the word *forward*, and advance.

It will not be necessary for the major to repeat to the left wing all the words of command given by the lieutenant-colonel, for should they not distinctly hear the order, they will watch the movement of the right wing, by which they will be enabled to perform the movement by the major's giving the word, (as soon as the left platoon of the right wing have advanced,) *left wing—right platoon—at wheeling distance—march;* when they will move off in the order of the right wing.

When the colonel perceives that the front platoon have arrived on the new line, he will give the caution to *form line*, and the lieutenant-colonel will give the order; and the front platoon will halt and dress by the right; the other platoons come up in succession, halt and dress by them.

It must be remembered that the right flank of each platoon is to govern in this movement; and also that the movement is to commence on the right bat-

Digitized by Google

talion company, and not on the light-infantry, unless the caution be to commence on that company.

MANŒUVRE No. 19.

TO ADVANCE IN DIRECT ECHELON FROM THE RIGHT OF WINGS.

Col. *Battalion will advance in direct echelon of platoons from the right of wings, half wheeling distance.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—By platoons—From the right, in succession, at half wheeling distance —March.*
Captain. *Forward.*
Col. *Echelon—Form a line.*
Lt. Col. *First platoon—Halt.*
Captain. *Halt—Right dress.*

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

The most usual way of advancing in direct echelon, is from the right or left of each wing: in which case, as above, the colonel must designate in the caution, the distance the platoons are to march from each other; as the commandants of wings must give the same order to each wing at the same time, that the corresponding platoons of each may march at the same time and at the same distance, and regulate their march by each other. This movement, in other respects, differs not from the preceding, except greater caution will be necessary in marching perpendicular to the front, to prevent contracting the line. It is better to extend the line than to contract it; but both are to be avoided.

The light-infantry in this movement, if not otherwise disposed of, as in all other movements of this kind, will advance in echelon with the battalion com-

Digitized by Google

pany next them in line. The music may remain in their places, or march with the first platoon, according to the directions of the commanding officer.

I have frequently seen a line thrown into an echelon by the platoons marking time, in succession, while the remainder of the line were gaining wheeling distance to the front. This may answer to habituate men to marching in various situations; but it is not a proper way of performing the echelon movement, as it in part destroys the object. The object of the direct echelon is to move a line to the front in small bodies, independent of each other, and thereby obviate the difficulty of dressing the whole line on the march.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 20.

TO MARCH IN DIRECT ECHELON TO THE REAR.

Col. *Battalion will retire in direct echelon of platoons from the right and left of the battalion, at three paces distant.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Right-about face—By platoons—From the right, in succession, at three paces distant—March.*

Captain. *Right-about face—Forward.*

Col. *Echelon will form a line.*

Lt. Col. *Front platoon—Halt.*

Captain. *Halt—Right about face—Right dress.* See Plate IV. No. 3.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

This movement might appear more regular by first changing front, and then retire from the right and left. But as it may be reasonably supposed that time will not always admit of changing front, it will be found necessary to retire, with the rear rank leading. I need not further explain this movement; it being performed on the same principle as the echelon to the front.

Thus the direct echelon may be commenced from either flank of the battalion, or from one or both flanks of each wing, either to the front or rear; and the platoons may march at any distance from each other, not to exceed wheeling distance, and marched any distance to the front or rear the commanding officer may think proper.

If at any time, while marching in echelon to the front direct, from the right of the battalion at wheeling distance, the officer finds it necessary to form a line to the left, the platoons may be wheeled to the left, then form a line on the left platoon, at right angles with the original line. To perform this movement, the platoons must march at wheeling distance.

Digitized by Google

If the echelon is commenced from the left, they may be wheeled to the right, then formed on the right platoon. If the officer wishes to form an oblique line, he will halt the echelon, then wheel the front platoon into the required direction; then wheel the remainder, half the distance of the front; then march and form a line on the front platoon.

MANŒUVRE No. 21.

INDIRECT ECHELONS.

TO WHEEL INTO AN ECHELON AND MARCH TO A POINT DISTANT, AND NOT WITHIN THE BATTALION.

Col. *Battalion will march in echelon to form in line to the right.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—By platoons to the right, half wheel—March.*

Captain. *Halt—Right dress.*

Lt. Col. *Echelon—Forward—March.*

Col. *Echelon will halt, and form a line.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Halt—To the left wheel into line—March.*

Captain. *Halt—Right (or left) dress.* See Plate V. No. 1.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

The object of this movement is to gain ground to the right as well as to the front; and each platoon having made a half wheel to the right, will march on an angle of 45 degrees to the right, independent of each other, and retain their relative position till ordered to halt. They are then wheeled into line, parallel with the original line, and dressed by the centre.

For a further explanation of this movement, see company movements, Part II. No. 71.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 22.

TO DISPLAY AN OPEN COLUMN, AND FORM ON THE FRONT BY ECHELON.

Col. *Column will wheel into echelon, to form a line on the first light-infantry.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—By platoons on the right, backward half wheel—March.*

Captain. *Halt—Dress.*

Lt. Col. *Echelon—Form a line on the light-infantry—March.*

Captain. *Right half wheel—Halt—Right (or left) dress.* See Plate V. No. 2.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

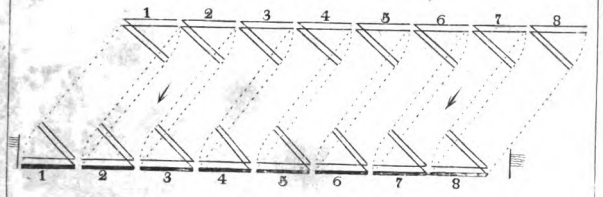
This is a simple movement, it being merely to half wheel the platoons on the right backwards, and display the column on the first platoon of the first light-infantry company, which stand fast; and which movement is sufficiently described in Part II. No. 58, where the same movement is performed by company.

One principal object of inserting the same movements for a battalion that are described for a company is, to give the words of command necessary to be applied to a battalion.

Digitized by Google

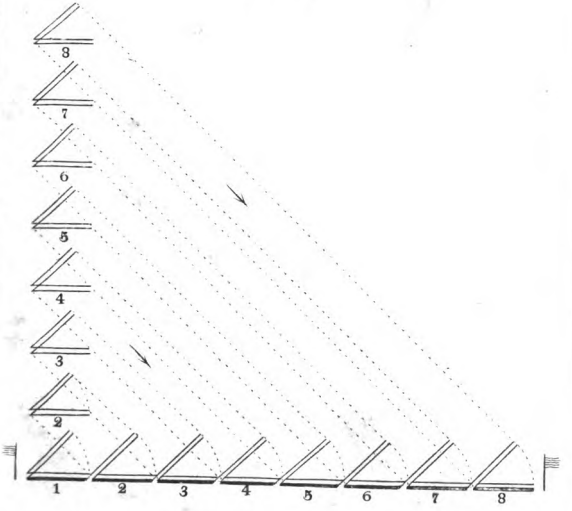
PLATE V.

No. 1.



Front

No. 2.



Digitized by Google

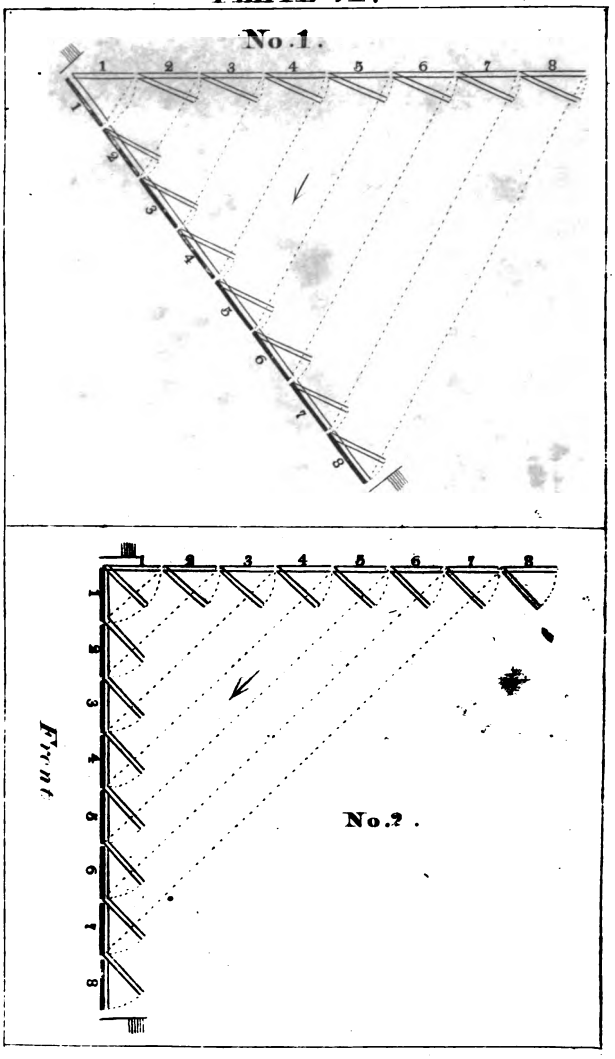
THE NEW
PUBLIC
ASTOR
TILD

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC
ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUN

Digitized by Google

PLATE VI.



Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 23.

TO HALF WHEEL THE LINE TO THE RIGHT BY ECHELON.

Col. *Battalion will half wheel to the right, on the right platoon.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—By platoons to the right, quarter wheel—March.*

Captain. *Halt—Right dress.*

Lt. Col. *Echelon—Form a line on the first platoon —March.*

Captain. *Right quarter wheel—Halt—Right (or left) dress.* See Plate VI. No. 1.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

The object of this movement is simply to half wheel the line to the right; for which purpose the platoons will make a quarter wheel in that direction and halt. At the word to *form a line*, they all move at the same time square to the front, till the right of each platoon arrives on the new line, taken by the right platoon: when the platoon officers will give word *right quarter wheel*, and the platoons will wheel in succession as they arrive on the line, and dress with the first platoon and markers.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 24.

TO HALF WHEEL THE LINE TO THE LEFT BY ECHELON.

Col. *Battalion will half wheel to the left on the left platoon.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—By platoons to the left quarter wheel—March.*

Captain. *Halt—Left Dress.*

Lt. Col. *Echelon—Form a line on the left platoon—March.*

Captain. *Left quarter wheel—Halt. Right (or left) dress.*

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

This movement is performed on the same principle as the preceding. Previous to giving the word to form a line on the right or left, the commander must see that the platoon on which the line is to be formed, is wheeled into the direction of the new line, and dressed by the markers, who will be previously posted for that purpose.

MANŒUVRE No. 25.

TO MAKE A FULL WHEEL OF THE LINE TO THE RIGHT.

Col. *Battalion will wheel to the right, on the right platoon, by echelon.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—By platoons to the right, half wheel—March.*

Captain. *Halt—Right dress.*

Lt. Col. *Echelon—Form a line on the first platoon—March.*

Captain. *Right half wheel—Halt—Right (or left) dress.* See Plate VI. No. 2.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

In this, as in the two preceding movements, the officers commanding platoons will march in front of

Digitized by Google

the centre, and the first and second sergeants on that flank of their respective platoons next the flank on which the line is formed. It is at all times to be remembered, that in wheeling the line by an echelon movement, the platoons in the first instance, wheel but half the distance required to be made by the line. When the pivot flank arrives on the line, the other half wheel is completed. The reason for this is given in Part II. No. 70, in Note.

When the line is wheeled to the right on the first platoon, the light-infantry of the right wing will face to the right-about, and wheel into echelon to the rear, and form a line on the right platoon. The second light-infantry will wheel into echelon to the front, and form the line the same as the battalion companies.

MANŒUVRE No. 26.

TO WHEEL THE LINE TO THE LEFT BY ECHELON.

Col. *Battalion will wheel to the left, by echelon, on the left platoon of light-infantry.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—By platoons—To the left, half wheel—March.*

Captain. *Halt—Left dress.*

Lt. Col. *Echelon—Form a line on the second light-infantry—March.*

Captain. *Left half wheel—Halt—Right (or left) dress.*

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

This movement is made on the light-infantry, who perform the movement the same as the battalion companies. The lieutenant-colonel, in giving the words of command to wheel into echelon to change position of the line, must be governed by the caution given by the colonel. If the caution is to form on the right or left company, then the line will be

Digitized by Google

wheeled by companies; but if it be to form on a platoon, then they must wheel by platoons, to the flank required. The line may at any time be wheeled on the light-infantry, either to the right or left, by giving the caution as in this movement. But when the caution is to wheel on the right or left platoon or company, or the first or eighth company, (as the caution may be given,) it means the battalion companies only.

MANŒUVRE No. 27.

TO HALF WHEEL THE LINE ON THE LEFT BACKWARD.

Col. *Battalion will half wheel on the left platoon backward.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Right-about face—Platoons to the right quarter wheel—March.*

Captain. *Halt—Right dress.*

Captain. *Halt—Right dress.*

Lt. Col. *Echelon—Form a line on the right—March.*

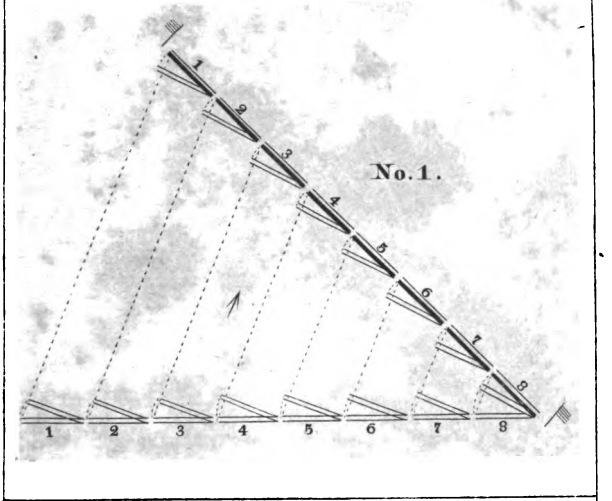
Captain. *Right quarter wheel—Halt—Right-about face—Right (or left) dress.* See Plate VII. No. 1.

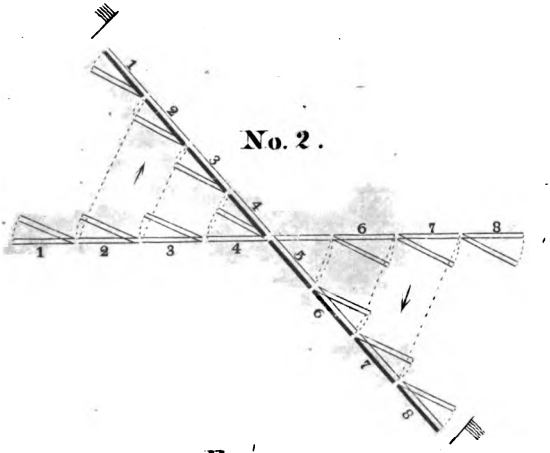
EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

All wheelings of the line are performed on the same principle. As soon as the line is wheeled into echelon, the officers commanding platoons will pass to the rear rank, and take post two paces in front of the rear rank, which now becomes the front rank, and see that they are dressed. As soon as each platoon arrives on the new line, they will be fronted by the officer commanding the platoon.

Digitized by Google

PLATE VII.





Front.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 28.

TO HALF WHEEL THE LINE ON THE CENTRE.

Col.	*Battalion will half wheel on the eighth platoon, left wing thrown forward.*
Lt. Col.	*Right wing—Right-about face—By platoons, right quarter wheel—March.*
Captain.	*Halt—Right dress.*
Major.	*Left wing—By platoons, right quarter wheel—March.*
Captain.	*Halt—Right—Dress.*
Lt. Col..	*Echelon—Form a line on the eighth platoon—March.*
Captain.	*Right quarter wheel—Halt—Right-about face—Left dress.*
Major.	*Echelon—Form a line on the eighth platoon—March.*
Captain.	*Right quarter wheel—Halt—Right dress.* See Plate VII. No. 2.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

At the word *face*, all the platoons on the right of the eighth, faces to the rear, and at the word *wheel*, they wheel inward, or towards the colours. The eighth platoon will make a half wheel on the left, backward, without facing; or they may face to the rear and wheel with the other platoons. But the former method is preferred, as it requires less time in arranging the new line; which it is important should be done with the least delay. The left wing will wheel to the right without facing, and march in echelon, and form a line on the eighth platoon.

NOTE.—The colonel can cause the battalion to change position on any named platoon or company in the battalion, either to the front or rear, on the

Digitized by Google

same principles; and under any required angle formed by the old and new lines, and, as in the last movement, one of the wings will change position to the front, and the other to the rear; conforming at all times to what has been prescribed for the indirect echelon movements.

MANŒUVRE No. 29.

TO FORM THE WINGS IN HOLLOW SQUARE BY ECHELON.

Col. *Battalion will form the hollow square by wings.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Form the hollow square in rear of the second company. Remaining companies—Right-about face—By platoons, inward half wheel—March.*

Major. *Left wing—Form the hollow square in rear of the sixth company. Remaining companies right-about face—By platoons—Inward half wheel—March.* See Plate VIII. No. 1.

Captain. *Halt—Right (or left) dress.*

Lt. Col. *Echelon—Form the square—March.*

Captain. *Right (or left) half wheel—Halt—Dress.*

Lt. Col. *Square outwards face.*

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

When the order is given *right-about face*, all the companies face to the rear, excepting those on which the squares are formed; and at the order, *inward half wheel*, all the platoons on the right of the companies on which the squares are formed, will wheel to the right as they then face, and those platoons on the left, wheel to the left as they then face; the right platoons making a half wheel in echelon on

Digitized by Google

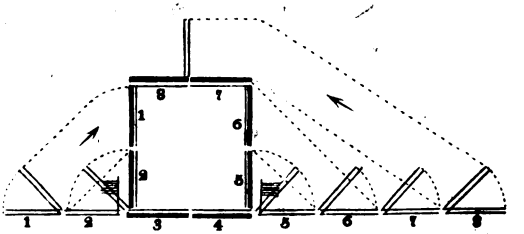
THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

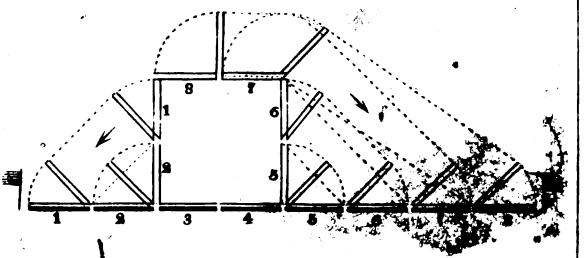
Digitized by Google

PLATE VIII.

No. 1.



No. 2.



Front.

Digitized by Google

their proper left; the left platoons on their proper right, with the rear rank leading. At the word *march*, all the platoons, except those on which the squares are formed, move on in echelon to form the square. The officers commanding platoons will give the word right or left half wheel (as the case may be) as soon as the leading flank of their platoons arrive at the square. The officers commanding the platoons which form the rear of the square, will give the word *left wheel into square*, as soon as they arrive at the corners of the square, or where their proper right is to rest. The left platoons of each wing will shorten their step, and oblique to the left, and march in rear of their right platoons, and make a half wheel to the left at the corner of the square, march close in rear of the preceding platoons, which are wheeled in; and wheel again to the left when even with the left flank of that platoon, then halt and dress without fronting. Thus the first and fifth companies will form the right of the squares, the second and sixth the front, the third and seventh the left, and the fourth and eighth the rear. The supernumerary officers will file within the squares; as also the light-infantry of each wing. The light-infantry of the right wing will form on the front and right of the square; and that of the left wing on the left and rear, both in single file. They are then faced inward by the officer commanding the wings.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 30.

TO REDUCE THE SQUARES AND FORM A LINE.

Col. *Battalion will form a line.*
Lt. Col. *Square outward face—Platoons to the right and left half wheel—March.*
Captain. *Halt—Dress.*
Lt. Col. *Echelon—Form a line—March.*
Captain. *Right (or left) half wheel—Halt—Right (or left) dress.* See Plate VIII. No. 2.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

After facing the squares outward, the platoons are wheeled into echelon as follows: the right of the squares will half wheel to the left, the left half wheel to the right and the rear, wheel once and a half to the right; and at the word *march*, they form the line, as before directed for echelon movements. The light-infantry file again to their places in line.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 31.

TO FORM THE SQUARE BY BATTALION FROM LINE.

Col. *Battalion will form the square in rear of the two centre companies.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Form the square in rear of the fourth and fifth companies. Remaining companies—Right-about face—Platoons—Right half wheel—March.*

Captain. *Halt—Right dress.*

Lt. Col. *Echelon—Form the square—March.*

Captain. *Right half wheel (or wheel into square)—Halt—Right dress.*

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

The square of the battalion is formed on the same principle of the square of wings; two companies constituting each side of the square. The major will give the word to the left wing, the same as the lieutenant-colonel to the right wing, except the platoons of the left wing wheel to the left instead of the right. The fourth and fifth companies will form the front of the square; the second and third the right; the first and eighth the rear; and the sixth and seventh the left. The light-infantry and musicians will file within the square as soon as the battalion face to the rear. The light-infantry will form on the same sides of the square as directed when formed by wings, in one rank, and the square will consist of three ranks.

Remarks.

Some have thought it better to form this square by grand divisions. That mode is, however, objected to, as it cannot be so readily formed; one of the companies which form the rear will have much fur-

Digitized by Google

ther to march. This might be an objection to forming the square on the second company, by wings, as the left will have further to march, than if it were formed on the two centre platoons. But the former is preferred, to prevent dividing the companies, as in the latter case, the right and left platoons of each battalion would form the rear of the square. But in forming the square on the centre by battalion, it only divides the grand divisions and not the companies, which is thought not to be so great an objection as the delay of forming by grand divisions.

This is the shortest possible mode of forming a square from line by battalion. The only mode prescribed in the War Regulations, of forming the square by battalion, is by closing column, and facing outward. But GARDNER, in his "Compend," directs that it be done from line, by filing from the right and left of companies; and this he declares to be the shortest possible way of performing it. But it is very obvious that the echelon movement is to be preferred to file-marching, in all movements where they can be applied with consistency; and more particularly in this movement. It not only obviates the difficulty of file-marching, but it greatly lessens the distance each platoon has to march, in order to arrive at their proper place in the square.

One other essential advantage derived from this mode of forming the square is, that it forms each company with the front rank outward, and each retain their proper right. But *Gardner* objects to this mode on that account; as he says, "it is a question whether the front rank, consisting of the shortest men, would be so well calculated to defend against cavalry as the rear rank:" but in filing into square, as this author directs, one half of the square are formed with the front rank outward.

Digitized by Google

In resisting cavalry, it is generally practised, for the outward rank to kneel and charge bayonet. If this be a correct way to resist cavalry, the shortest men are certainly the best calculated for this service. Or if both ranks are to stand, I would form the shortest men in front, for the same reason that they are formed there in the first instance, viz. that the rear rank may fire over the heads of the front rank. *Gardner* enumerates six different ways of forming the square. 1st. By breaking into column of grand divisions to the right, and close up to half wheeling distance, then wheel the companies to the right and left. 2d. By breaking into column of grand divisions to the left. 3d. To the right and left upon the centre of the battalion. 4th. By forming column of grand divisions, at company distance, in rear of the right. 5th. Upon the left; and 6th. Upon the centre of the battalion. This author remarks, "that the British mode of forming the square by one battalion, is the only one which forms every side of the square, with the front rank outward;" and this he objects to on that account.

In the War Regulations, the light-infantry are formed by companies or platoons on the corners of the square, in a diagonal position, ten paces distant. The author would inquire if it would not be possible for cavalry, when charging a square formed in this way, to pass between the square and the light-infantry, and attack them in rear; and if so, if it would not be likely to be attended with fatal consequences?

In the militia evolutions, the square is formed for various purposes; but generally for the purpose of hearing some communication of the officers, and which requires them to be formed as compact as possible. Should the square be attacked by cavalry while in this position, the outward rank will kneel and charge bayonet, by placing the breech of the

Digitized by Google

piece on the ground, and reserve their fire until they can be sure of their mark. The other two ranks will keep up a brisk fire by independent files. The light-infantry may be moved to either side of the square, to support that part which may be the most threatened. The square may at any time be formed by wings or battalion, in front of the line on any named company or grand division, by wheeling forward into echelon, without facing. But this would form the square with the rear rank of each company outward, which should at all times be carefully avoided. When the square is formed to resist the attacks of cavalry, it must be left to the judgment of the commanding officer, whether to form the infantry on the corners, or the interior of the square.

MANŒUVRE No. 32.

TO FORM THE SQUARE BY WINGS FROM COLUMN OF PLATOONS.

Col. *Battalion will form the hollow square by wings.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Form companies—March. Close the column to form hollow square —March—Halt—Platoons outward wheel, and form the square—March.*

Captain. *Left oblique—March—Forward—Right (or left) wheel—Halt—Right (or left) dress.*

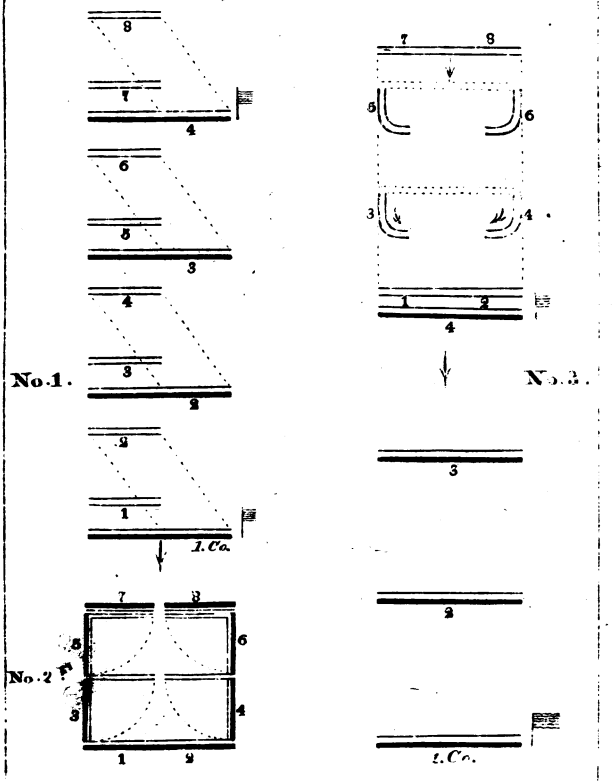
Lt. Col. *Rear of the square—Outward face.* See Plate IX. No. 1 and 2.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

When the word is given to form *companies*, the officers commanding the left platoon of each company will cause them to oblique their length to the left, and lengthen their step, and form on the left of the first platoon; which platoon will shorten their step, and march directly to the front; and as soon as the

Digitized by Google

PLATE IX.



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

captain sees that the company are formed, he will give the word *forward*, and all move to the front with the common length of step. See No. 1. When the officers of wings perceive that the companies are all formed, they will give the word to close column; when the front company of each wing will shorten their step to 14 inches, and the other companies will lengthen their step to 36 inches; and the second and third companies will close up to half wheeling distance of the companies immediately in front of them, and the rear companies in close order. They are then halted by the officers of wings; and the two centre companies are wheeled outward by platoons to the right and left; the left wheel to the left and form the left of the square, and the right platoons wheel to the right and form the right of the square. The rear of the square are then brought up in close order, and faced about, and each side will present both ranks facing outward; or they may all be faced inward, or to the front, or any other flank of the square. The front and rear of the square must cover the flank of the right and left. See No. 2. When this square is formed to resist cavalry, and they are threatened with an immediate attack, each captain will face his company outward as soon as they arrive at their places in square, without waiting for the word from the commanding officer. But when formed for any other purpose they will wait for the order, as it may not be known what flank they are to face to. The light-infantry and musicians will file within the square as soon as the column halts, and form as before directed. This mode of forming the square, presents the front rank of each company outward, except the rear; which company must countermarch, if formed with the front rank outward; but it is thought not to be of sufficient importance to justify the delay.

Digitized by Google

This square is sometimes formed from column of companies on the march, by filing from the right and left of the two centre companies. But this would form three sides of the square with the rear rank outward, besides the difficulty of file-marching, which will naturally occur in a militia battalion.

MANŒUVRE No. 33.

TO REDUCE THE SQUARES OF WINGS, AND FORM COLUMN ON THE MARCH.

Col. *Battalion will reduce the squares, and form open column of platoons.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Form open column of companies—March. Form platoons—March.*

Captain. *To the right (or left) turn—Front face. Right oblique—forward.* See Plate IX, No. 3.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

The square is faced to the front, and on the march formed in column as follows: the officers commanding the platoons on the left of the square, give the word *right turn*, and those commanding the right, *left turn;* and each platoon turn to the right and left, and march to the centre; when the captain will give the word *front face*, and march to the front in open column of companies. At the word to form platoons, the officers commanding the left platoons give the word *right oblique*, and shorten their step, and oblique to the right, and form in rear of the right platoon.

This square may likewise be reduced by halting, and facing to the right and left outward, and wheeling on the right and left backward, and form companies; then move to the front, and take open column of companies, or break off and form open column of platoons.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 34.

TO FORM THE HOLLOW SQUARE BY BATTALION, FROM OPEN COLUMN OF PLATOONS ON THE MARCH.

Col. *Battalion will form the hollow square on the centre, by companies.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Form companies—March. Close column—March—Halt. First and second companies—Right face—Form the right of the square—March—Outward (or centre) face.*

Captain. *Left oblique—Forward—Halt—Dress. Right turn—Halt—Right dress.* See Plate X. No. 1 and 2.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

In this movement, companies are formed in the same manner as in Manœuvre No. 32; and at the word to close column, the companies close within one pace; leaving a space between the wings of almost wheeling distance. After being halted, the first and second companies are faced to the right: they then turn by files to the right, and form the right of the square. The seventh and eighth companies are faced to the left, then filed to the right, and form the left of the square. See No. 1. The sides of the square cover the flanks of the front and rear. The first light-infantry company and the musicians will file to the left, to the interior of the square; and the second light-infantry will file to the right, and form on the left and rear of the square; the first on the front and right of the square. Thus the first grand division will form the right of the square, four deep, the second the front, the third the rear, and the fourth the left; or the right wing the front and right of the square, and the left wing the left and rear of the square. This forms the square four deep,

Digitized by Google

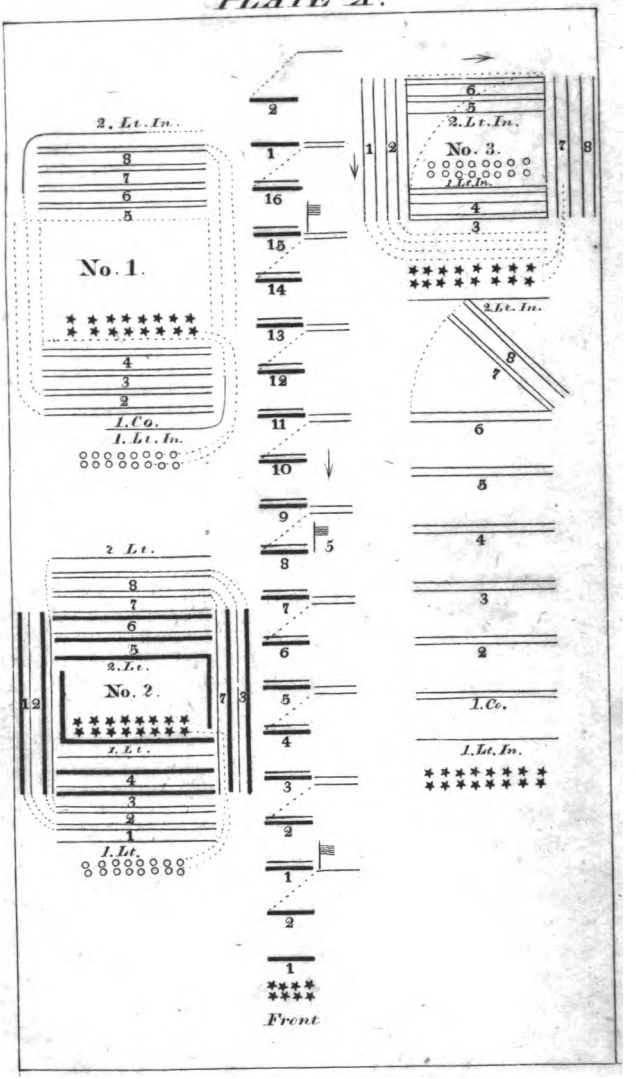
exclusive of the light-infantry. See No. 2. They may be prepared for the attack of cavalry in the following manner: the outward rank are ordered to kneel as in No. 89, Part I.; and the other three ranks at the approach of the cavalry ordered to fire by independent files, in the manner pointed out for three ranks, in Nos. 87 and 88. At the caution to commence firing, the front rank must not fire until the cavalry charge; and the light-infantry will also reserve their fire till the cavalry are so near that they can aim at the heads of the horsemen over the square. As there is no mode prescribed in the War Regulations for forming the hollow square by battalion; and as the author conceives it to be of great importance that a uniform system be established, he has ventured to offer the foregoing, which is probably different from any mode now practised; and which for its shortness and simplicity is preferable to any now in use. This square, after halting the column, may be formed in eight seconds, and prepared to resist an attack of cavalry.

This square may be faced to either flank and march in square, by two sides marching by the lock step; but the officers must be careful that the files do not open. If it be wished to reduce the square and form on the original line, it may be done by filing the sides of the square to their places in front and rear, then face the column to the rear, and take wheeling distance from the first company, then wheel into line. But if the ground and circumstances will admit, it should be done while moving to the front, as in the following movement.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

PLATE X.



Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 35.

TO REDUCE THE HOLLOW SQUARE AND FORM COLUMN.

Col. *Battalion will reduce the square and move to the front in open column of platoons.*

Lt. Col. *First grand division—To the front of the square—Face—File to the front—March. Right wing—Forward—March. Take wheeling distance—March. Form platoons—March.*

Captain. *Left turn—Halt—Front face. Left platoon—Right oblique—March—Forward.* See Plate X. No. 3, 4 and 5.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

The first grand division being on the right of the square, will face to the front at the order; then file to their places in front. The captains will give the word *left turn*, when arrived opposite their positions, and when in column, *halt* and *front*. The fourth grand division will keep their places on the left until the column have marched past them; they will then wheel to the left into column. See No. 3. The lieutenant-colonel will give the word for the right wing to *march*, as soon as the first grand division have faced to the front; and immediately after give the word to *take wheeling distance*, when the first company will move to the front, and as soon as they have obtained wheeling distance from the second company, they will follow; and each company as they see the one in front of them have obtained wheeling distance, they move to the front in succession. As soon as the rear company of the right wing begin to move, the major will give the word to the left wing to *march* and to *take wheeling distance*, and they follow in succession as the right wing. See No. 4. As soon as the companies have all obtain-

Digitized by Google

ed wheeling distance, the order is given to form platoons, when the lieutenants will give the word to the left platoons, *right oblique*; and they will shorten their step and oblique to the right, and take wheeling distance and dress the left flank. See No. 4. The column may then be halted, and wheeled into line, or perform any other movement thought proper.

MANŒUVRE No. 36.

TO PASS A DEFILE IN REAR OF THE LEFT FLANK.

Col. *Battalion will pass the defile in rear from the right wing.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—By platoons from the right, in succession, at wheeling distance—Pass the defile in rear—March—Halt. Left wheel into line—March.*

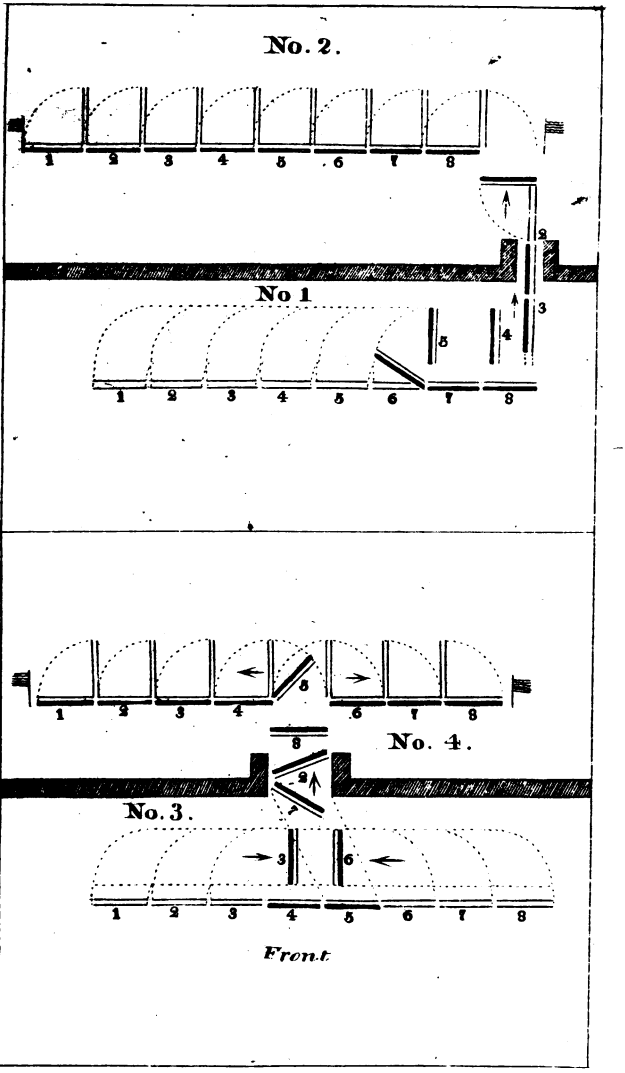
Captain. *Right about face—Right wheel—March—Forward—Left face—Form platoon—March—Left wheel—Halt—Dress.* See Plate XI. No. 1 and 2.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

At the word *march*, the captain of the first company will cause the first platoon to face to the rear, then wheel them to the right, and march by platoon three paces in rear of the line, with the rear rank leading, until opposite the defile; then (if the defile be such that it be necessary to pass it by files) he will face his platoon to the left without halting, and pass the defile by files; the right of the platoon leading. As soon as his platoon has cleared the defile, he will again form platoon, and march in the direction of the new line. Suppose the line is to be formed parallel with the original one, the first platoon will wheel to

Digitized by Google

PLATE XI.



Front

Digitized by Google

PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

Digitized by Google

the left, and march with the left flank on the new line. All the succeeding platoons will perform the movement as has been prescribed for the first; and if they observe their true wheeling distance, they will arrive at their places on the new line at the same time; when they are halted by the colonel, and wheeled into line to the left.

Should the breadth of the defile admit of a platoon, each platoon will face to the left when opposite the right flank of the defile, as above, and immediately form platoons on the right, and pass the defile in that order, with the front rank leading. Should it be necessary, after passing the defile, to form the line at right angles, or nearly so with the old one, and facing the left flank; the first platoon will be wheeled to the right, and the succeeding platoons wheeled in succession, as they severally march past the platoon in front of them.

MANŒUVRE No. 37.

TO PASS THE DEFILE IN REAR OF THE CENTRE.

Col. *Battalion will pass the defile in rear, from the right and left.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—By platoons from the right, in succession, at wheeling distance—Pass the defile in rear—March.*

Captain. *Right about face—Right (or left) wheel—March—Forward—Right face—Form platoon.* See Plate XI. No. 3 and 4.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

The major will give the same words of command, and at the same time, to the left wing, that are given to the right wing, except he will make use of the word left instead of right. At the word *march*, the

Digitized by Google

platoon on the right, and the platoon on the left of the battalion face to the rear, and wheel inward at the same time, and march to the opposite side of the defile. Should the platoons of the left wing arrive at the defile sooner than the platoons of the right wing, they will wait until the corresponding platoon of the right wing have faced and marched past them; when they will face to the right and form upon the right of the left flank. The platoons of the right wing will form upon the left of the right flank; and both wings pass the defile in column at half wheeling distance. Should the platoons of the right wing arrive at the defile any considerable time previous to the corresponding platoons of the left wing, they will shorten their step, that the other platoons may gain their proper distance from those in front. The platoons of the right wing will march in front of the corresponding platoons of the left wing.

If the line is to be formed wholly on the left of the defile and parallel with the old, the head of the column will be wheeled to the left as soon as past the line of formation; and the leading platoon of the left wing wheeled again to the left, and commence the line on the left, and the left wing will form a line in succession to the left, which will leave the platoons of the right wing at wheeling distance. As soon as the right platoon of the left wing have wheeled into line, the right wing will halt, and all wheel into line at the same time. But if it be wished to form a line at right angles with the old one, and facing the left flank of the old line, then the platoons of the right wing will wheel to the right in succession, as in Manœuvre No. 36, and the left wing will march in open column to the left flank and halt, and wheel into line to the right. Or should it be ordered to form a line parallel with the old, and the centre in rear of the defile, then the platoons of

Digitized by Google

the right wing will wheel to the left, and the platoons of the left wing to the right, and march in rear of the new line till the rear platoons of each have past the line, when they are halted; and the right wing wheeled into line to the left, and the left wing to the right.

When passing a defile in retreat, the light-infantry may be posted to defend the passage until the battalion have marched through, when they will march in quick time to their respective places in line. Or the movement may commence from the light-infantry if ordered. When passing a defile in retreat, it should be commenced from that flank or flanks which are at the greatest distance from the defile, that the retreat may be covered, and the pass defended until nearly all have passed the defile. But in passing a defile in advancing, it should be commenced by those platoons nearest the defile, and wheel into line in front of the defile, to defend it while those in rear march through.

In the War Regulations, this movement is performed by file-marching only. But it is very obvious that marching in column is to be preferred to file-marching, when the ground and circumstances will admit; and more particularly in the militia, where it cannot be expected that they should have a perfect knowledge of file-marching. And indeed it is to be preferred in the movement of all kinds of troops, however experienced they may be in file-marching, where there is no possibility of any benefit resulting from file movements, as in the two preceding Numbers. If the defile be ever so small, the battalion may march in column, or by independent platoons until opposite the defile; and if the defile will not admit a platoon, they can then face to the right or left, and pass the defile by files.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 38.

TO PASS THE DEFILE IN FRONT FROM THE CENTRE.

Col.	*Battalion will pass the defile in front from the centre.*
Lt. Col.	*Right wing—By platoons to the left wheel—March—Pass the defile in front—Forward—March.*
Captain.	*Right (or left) wheel.*
Major.	*Left wing—By platoons to the right wheel—March—Pass the defile in front—Forward—March.*
Col.	*Battalion will form line on the front.*
Lt. Col.	*Right wing—Front platoon—Halt—Column form a line to the right on the front platoon.*
Captain.	*Right wheel—Left wheel into line—Halt—Left dress.*
Major.	*Left wing—Form a line to the left—March.*
Captain.	*Left wheel—Right wheel into line—Halt—Right dress.* See Plate XII. No. 1 and 2.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

If the defile will admit a platoon, and it presents itself directly in front of the centre, as the movement supposes, the left platoon of the right wing will be marched their length to the front without wheeling, and the remainder wheeled to the left. The left wing will wheel to the right at the same time. At the word *march*, both columns step off together, and the platoons of the left wing will double in rear of the corresponding platoons of the right wing, by the platoons of each obliquing half their length to the right and left, and march at half wheeling distance. When the front of the column have

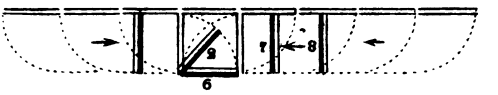
Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

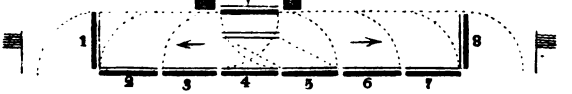
Digitized by Google

PLATE XII.



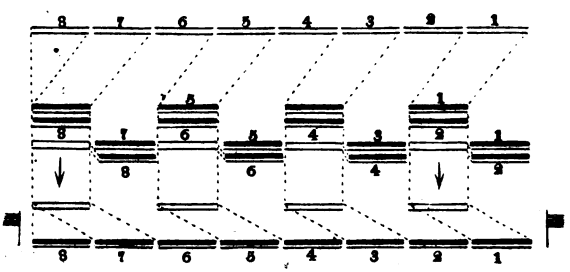
No. 1.

No. 2.



Front.

No. 3.



Digitized by Google

passed the defile, and arrived on the new alignment, the colonel will give the caution to *form line*, and the front platoon will be halted by the lieutenant-colonel, and the remainder wheeled to the right in rear of the front platoon, and marched in rear of the line until their left is uncovered by the line, when they will wheel to the left into line, halt and dress by the left. As soon as the order is given to form a line on the front, the leading platoon of the left wing will oblique to the left and form a line on the front platoon without wheeling; and the remaining platoons of each wing must wheel on a moveable pivot to the right and left, to avoid interfering with each other in that movement. The platoons of the left wing will wheel to the left, and march in rear of the line, and wheel to the right the same as the right wing have done to the left; halt and dress to the right.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 39.

PASSAGE OF LINES RETREATING.

The left wing being wheeled out of line, and marched twenty paces to the rear of the right wing, and wheeled into line facing them, the colonel will give the caution—

Col. *Battalion will retire and pass lines.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Right-about face—Forward—March—Form double platoons in close order—March. Form a line—March—Halt—Right-about face.*

Captain of the right wing. *Right platoon—Mark time. Right oblique—March—Forward—Right platoon—Left oblique—March—Forward—Dress.*

Major. *Left wing—Form double platoons in close order—March. Form a line—March.*

Captain of the left wing. *Left platoon—Right face—Halt—Front face—Dress—Left face—Form a line—Halt—Dress.* See Plate XII. No. 3.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

The battalion in this movement, to have the semblance of an engagement, and a retreat, will perform the motion of firing as they retire. The right wing may be ordered to fire, then faced to the right-about, and marched in line until within a short distance of the left wing, when the order is given to form double platoons; and each captain will give the order to the right platoon of his company to mark time until the left platoons have marched past them; when they will oblique to the right, until directly in rear of the left platoons; when the order is given, *forward*, and the two platoons will move to the front in

Digitized by Google

column, close order, left in front, and rear rank leading. When the order is given to the right wing to *form double platoons*, the major will give the same order to the left wing, and the lieutenants will face each left platoon to the right, and form them in rear of the right, in close order, front and dress them. The right wing will then pass the left, through the space left by the left platoons of the left wing; and as soon as they are clear of the rear platoons, the major will give the word *form a line*, and the lieutenants will face their respective platoons to the left, display and form a line with the right platoons. The major may then give the word to *fire*, and afterwards face to the right-about and pass the right wing, in the same manner as they passed the left. The right, after passing a short distance to the rear, will receive the word to form a line, which will be done on the march, by the captains giving the word to the right platoons to oblique to the left, and form a line on the left. After marching a prescribed distance to the rear, the line will be halted and faced to the right-about; and if the left wing are to pass to the rear of them, the right wing will perform the same movements as directed for the left.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 40.

TO WHEEL INTO COLUMN, RIGHT IN FRONT, AND MARCH TO THE RIGHT FLANK, AND PERFORM VARIOUS MOVEMENTS ON THE MARCH.

Col. *Battalion will wheel into column to march to the right flank, in common time.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—By platoons on your left backward wheel—March.*
Captain. *March—Halt—Left dress.*
Col. *Column—Forward.*
Lt. Col. *Common time—Forward—March.*
Captain. *Forward.* See Plate XIII. No. 1.

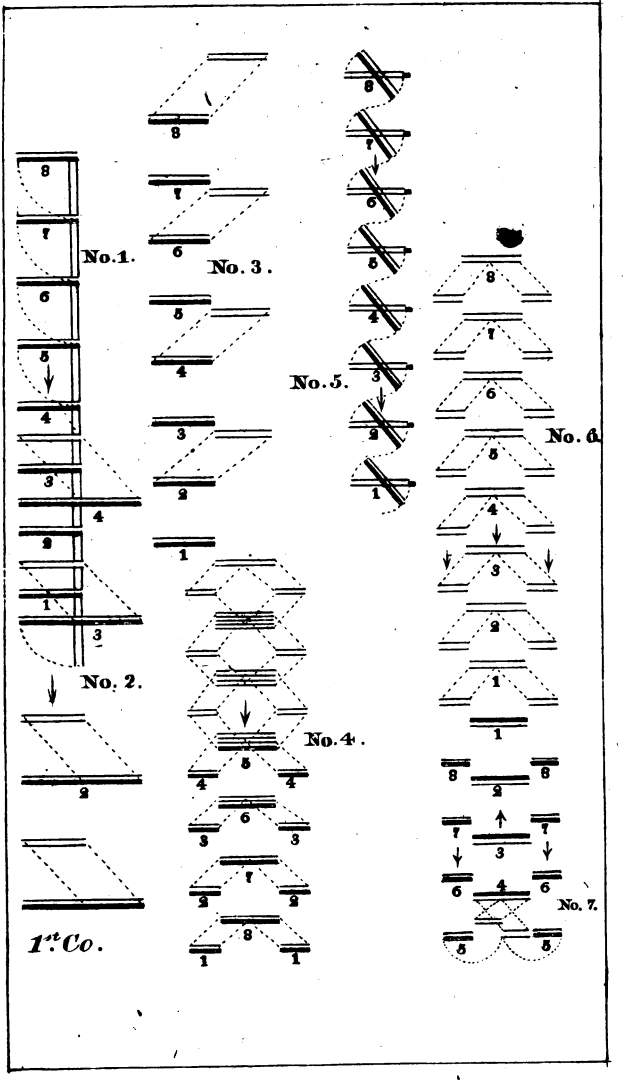
The major will give the order to the left wing to wheel and march at the same time the lieutenant-colonel gives the order to the right wing; and the captains of each will quickly repeat the word *forward*, lest it should not be distinctly heard from the officers of wings; at which word the whole column move to the front in common time, and dress by the left. If the colonel wishes to form companies on the march, he will first give the signal to the music to beat time, then give the following caution—

Col. *Column will form companies.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—Form companies—March.*
Captain. *Short step—Left oblique—Forward—Common step.* See No. 2.

At the word to *form companies*, the officers commanding the right platoon of each, will order their platoons to shorten their step, and continue marching directly to the front; and the officers of the left platoon will order their platoons to oblique to the left, and form on the left of the right platoons; when each platoon will again take the common step and

Digitized by Google

PLATE XIII.



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

dress by the left, and the companies will march at wheeling distance.

It is to be remembered in the execution of all movements on the march, that the music are to beat time, previous to giving the command or caution. For which purpose, the colonel will have some signal of the sword, which may be understood by the music-majors, and to which they will at all times attend.

Whenever it be necessary to form platoons from companies, the caution is given—

Col. *Column will form platoons.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—Form platoons—March.*
Captain. *Mark time—Right oblique—March—Forward.* See No. 3.

When the word is given to form platoons, the officers commanding the left platoons will give the word, *mark time*, and when the right platoons have passed them, their platoon will oblique to the right, and shorten their step until they cover the right platoons and obtain wheeling distance: when the order is given *forward*, and they all move to the front in open column of platoons.

If at any time the colonel wishes to change the head of the column, he will give the caution—

Col. *Column will change its head, rear to the front.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—By sections from the centre, to the right and left oblique—March—Mark time.*
Captain. *Right (or left) oblique—Forward—Right dress—Mark time.*
Major. *Rear platoon—Forward—March.* See No. 4.

In this movement the musicians, if in front, will not open to the right and left, but mark time as soon

Digitized by Google

as the column have obliqued from the centre sufficient for the platoons to pass through from the rear. As soon as the column have thus obliqued to the right and left, the lieutenant-colonel will give the word to *mark time*, and the major will give the word for the rear platoon of light-infantry to move to the front through the centre of the column. And each platoon in succession, as the one immediately in rear have passed them, oblique to the centre, and follow at wheeling distance. As soon as the platoons are again formed, the first and second sergeants and markers will pass to the right of their respective platoons, and dress the right flank. When the rear platoon have gained their proper distance from the musicians they will again move to the front, and commence playing. When the column marches left in front, the field officers will march on the right flank of the column opposite their places when right in front.

When the colonel wishes to reverse the order of march, and move the column directly to the rear of their present direction, whether the right or left is in front, the caution is given—

Col. *Column will reverse the order of march by wheeling on the centre of platoons.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Mark time—By platoons on your centre files—Right-about wheel—March—Forward—March.*

Captain. *Mark time—Right-about wheel—Forward—Right dress.* See No. 5.

At the word *right-about wheel,* the sergeants and markers on the left, if the right is in front, will face to the left-about, and not wheel with the platoons. At the word *march*, the platoons will wheel to the right-about on the centre man of the front rank, by

Digitized by Google

the right of the platoons wheeling backward and the left forward, according to No. 30, Part II. The markers will take post in the rear rank, covering the sergeants on the right. As soon as the wheel be completed, the order is given by the lieutenant-colonel and major—*Forward—March*, and all move off together with the left in front, and dress by the right. The musicians will wheel at the same time with the column, and march in rear. If the colonel wishes to change the head of this column before wheeling into line, it will be performed the same as before explained, excepting, all the platoons open to the right and left, and the musicians pass through first; the platoons close to the centre, and pass through in succession as before; and the sergeants and markers go to the left as soon as each platoon is formed.

To countermarch a column through the centre, the caution is given—

Col. *Column will countermarch to the rear, through the centre.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Sections from the centre to the right oblique—March—Column countermarch to the rear through the centre—Front platoon inwards wheel—March—Change sections.*

Captain. *Right (or left) oblique—Forward—Right (or left) about wheel—Right (or left) oblique—March—Forward.*

This movement is not intended to change the head of the column, but to countermarch and change the direction to the rear, and it may be performed with either flank leading. The platoons open from the centre sufficient to admit a platoon of equal length; then move to the front until the order is given to wheel inwards; see No. 6; when the musi-

Digitized by Google

cians, if they are in front, will wheel inwards to the right and left about, at which time the order will be given by the lieutenant-colonel, *change sections*, and the left will shorten their step, and oblique to the left in rear of the right, and the right section will oblique to the right, in front of the left, until they have uncovered each other; see No. 7; when the left section will lengthen their step, and come up briskly, and dress by the right section. And each platoon in succession will wheel on the same ground, and the sections will pass each other immediately after wheeling.

To countermarch a column on the flanks, the caution is given—

Col. *Column will countermarch to the rear on the flanks.*

Lt. Col. *Right wing—Countermarch to the rear on the flanks—Front platoon—To the right and left about wheel—March.*

Captain. *Right (or left) about wheel—Forward.* See Plate XIV. No. 1.

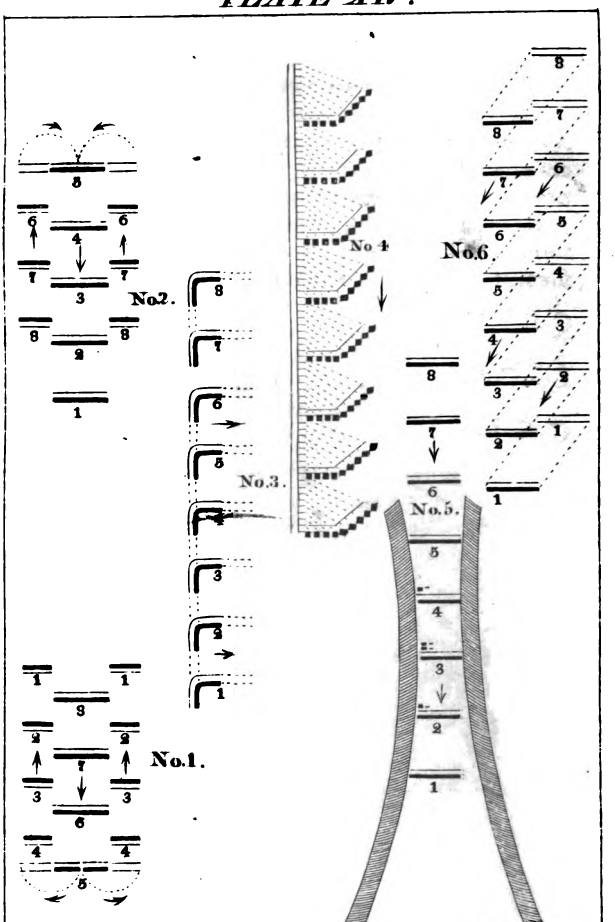
This movement, like the preceding, is performed on the march without halting or marking time. The platoons all wheel on the same ground, and on the right and left hand men of the front rank. After completing the wheel, the sections will oblique one or two steps to the right and left, to avoid interfering with the flanks of the platoons in rear; and the sections must be particularly careful to keep opposite each other while marching on the flanks of the column, and the wheeling distance of platoons observed.

When the front platoon arrives at the rear of the column, they may again wheel inwards and follow the rear platoon, and move to the front in the original position; see No. 2; or the order may be given to change sections, which is performed as before.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

PLATE XIV.



Digitized by Google

and the column will march to the original rear, or the sections may be marched in open order until the rear platoon have wheeled outwards, when the word may be given, *change sections*, and the whole column perform the movement at the same time.

If the battalion are marching by columns of platoons, right in front, and it be wished to march by files, the colonel will give the following caution—

Col. *Column will march by files from the right of platoons.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—From the right of platoons advance by files—Right face—March.*
Captain. *Right face—Left turn.* See No. 3.

When the order is given to face to the right, all face except the right hand man of the front rank, who will march directly to the front. The right hand man of the rear rank will step up to the right of his file leader, and march in close order; each file will turn to the left on the same ground, and march with files closed, and exactly in rear of the files in front. The officers will march on the left flank of their companies opposite their places in line. For a more particular description of this movement, see company movements, No. 33, Part II.

To form platoons from file-marching, the caution is given—

Col. *Battalion will form column of platoons.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—form column of platoons—March.*
Captain. *Left half face—Form platoons—Left dress.* See No. 4.

In this movement the right hand man of the front rank of each platoon will continue marching directly to the front without varying their step, and the

Digitized by Google

remainder form upon their left in quick time. See Part II. No. 34.

When the battalion are marching in column, in common time, and the colonel wishes to change to quick time, he will give the caution—

Col. *Column will march in quick time.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—Quick time—March.*

And the musicians will immediately play quick time, when the battalion will instantly take the step with the music, and follow in quick time. If any one be apprehensive that he has not the step with the music, he will look to one of the markers, or to the ensign of the company, for that purpose, who will be particularly careful that they have the regular step.

A battalion marching in column, and the colonel finding the width of the passage to diminish, as in passing a bridge or gate, he will order files to be broken off in the following manner.

Col. *Column—Break off files from the front.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—One file on the right (or left, or right and left,) break off—March.* See No. 5.

Files are broken off and formed in rear according to rules prescribed in Part II. Nos. 51 and 52. The front may be diminished by breaking off files from the right or left or both flanks at the same time, and by one or more files at the same order, according to the width of the passage or defile. The platoons will diminish their front in succession, as they arrive on the ground where the front commenced the movement. Files will again form to the front in succession as they before broke off, after having passed the defile. The last files broken off, form up first. See Part II. No. 53.

Digitized by Google

To oblique a column to the right, the caution is—

Col. *Column will oblique to the right.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—To the right oblique—March.*
See No. 6.

This order should be given in a voice that all may hear, and commence the movement at the same time, according to principles of the oblique step, as described in Part I. No. 27. When the column have gained sufficient ground to the right flank, the order is given—

Forward—March.

And the march to the front direct is resumed.

A PLAN OF A SHAM FIGHT.

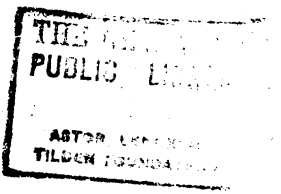
A movement of this kind might be made useful and interesting on days of review, if properly regulated; but it should never be attempted without the most perfect understanding between the officers, of the several parts which they are to act. Various modes of attack and defence may be supposed, and practised, but they at all times must depend on the situation of the ground, and the disposition of the troops. This movement supposes a battalion formed in line with a wood, or broken ground, or a stone wall to cover the right flank, which may be found near most parades. See Plate XV. No. 1. In this situation, the command of the left wing will be given to the major, (with the adjutant to assist him,) who will detach them from the right, and march a considerable distance to the front, and form in column, fronting the left flank of the right wing, with the second light-infantry in front. See No. 2. The command of the right wing will be given to the lieutenant-colonel, with the sergeant-major to assist him. The colonel will superintend the movements of both, and see that the movements are all performed agree-

Digitized by Google

able to previous arrangements. As soon as the left wing are detached from the right, the light-infantry of the right will be detached, and posted twenty or thirty paces in advance of the right flank, under cover of a wood or fence, ready to act upon the left flank of the left wing. See No. 1.

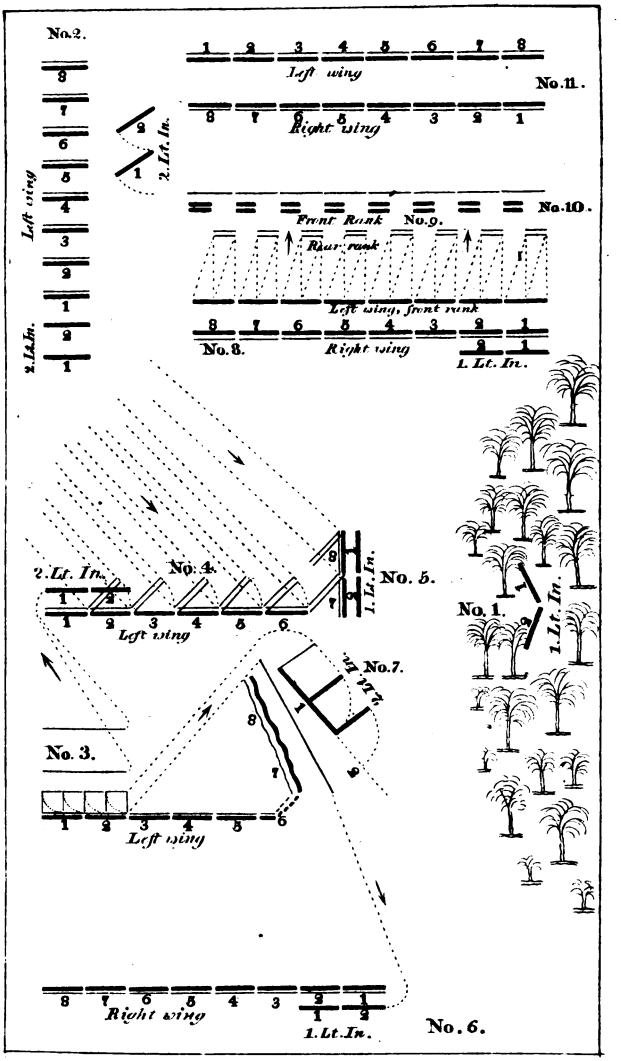
The left wing will advance in open column of platoons, to attack the left flank of the right wing, and when within twenty or thirty paces they will halt; which will be the signal for their light-infantry to fire and file off to the right. See No. 3. The column will then be wheeled into echelon, and displayed to the left on the front platoon, and each will fire as they arrive on the line; and the light-infantry will form in rear of the right, and immediately load their pieces, and be ready to move to any part of the line which may be the most threatened. See No. 4. The right wing will commence their fire from the left, by platoons; firing obliquely to the left, according to their situation in line. At this time, the light-infantry will appear and attack the left flank before the line is fully formed, and fire by platoons; when the left company of the left wing will be formed at right angles with the line to oppose them; and the light-infantry will charge on the left flank, and turn them; See No. 5; when the light-infantry of the left will march to their relief, and the light-infantry of the right will retire in rear of the right flank of the right wing. See No. 6 and 7. While this is performing, the two lines will keep up a brisk fire by independent files. As soon as the light-infantry have succeeded in turning the left flank of the left wing, the right wing will advance at the charge; and the rear rank of the left will retire ten or twelve paces, and halt and form in sections, load their pieces, and be in readiness to fire, when they are uncovered by the front rank, see No. 8 and 9. The front rank, af-

Digitized by Google



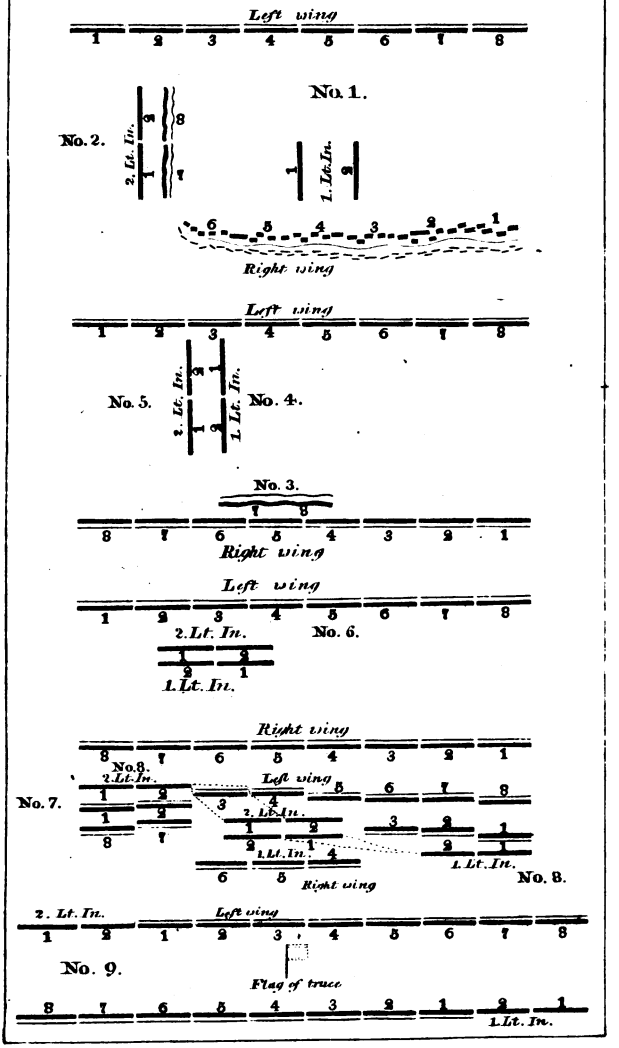
Digitized by Google

PLATE XV.



Digitized by Google

PLATE XVI.


Left wing
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
No. 1.
No. 2.
2. Lt. In.
1. Lt. In.
Right wing
No. 5.
No. 4.
No. 3.
No. 6.
2. Lt. In.
1. Lt. In.
No. 7.
No. 8.
No. 9.
Flag of truce

Digitized by Google

ter sustaining the charge for a short time, will face about and retire in quick time and form in sections and pass the rear rank a short distance—*halt—front*, and again load their pieces. See No. 10. As soon as the front rank have passed the rear rank, they will form line and fire by companies at the same time, and immediately face to the rear, and pass their front rank, and form a line in close order; when the front rank will again form line and fire. See No. 11.

Both ranks will now in their turn advance at the charge upon the right wing, who will retire with an accelerated step in some confusion. See Plate XVI. No. 1. The left wing will advance slowly and in order; and the light-infantry of the left wing having filed to the right flank in rear of the line, and fallen back in rear of the right wing while they were advancing, will now attack them on the left in rear; and one company on the left will be halted to oppose them, see No. 2, on whom the light infantry will charge bayonet after one fire, and the battalion company will retire in rear of their own line; see No. 3; when the light-infantry of the right will come to their relief; see No. 4; which will bring the two light-infantry companies between the two lines. See No. 5. At this time the left wing will arrive at the scene of action of the light-infantry, who have charged bayonet upon each other; and the first light-infantry will wheel backwards on the right, and form a line parallel with the right wing; see No. 6; and the right wing seeing the perilous situation of their light-infantry, will immediately advance at the charge, and the two lines will meet where the light-infantry are engaged, see No. 7, who must not retire until the two lines are in close contact; when each will file through their lines to the rear, and take post in rear of the right. See No. 8.

Digitized by Google

After a short engagement of the two lines with the bayonet, each wing will retire a few paces to the rear without facing, and a flag of truce will appear on one flank, and pass through between the two lines, when hostilities will cease. See No. 9. After which the two wings may again be formed in line, and perform any other movements thought proper, or put through the battalion firings, as hereafter described.

TO FIRE BY INDEPENDENT FILES.

Col. *Battalion will perform the firings. Prepare to load.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—Prime and load.*

This order will be repeated by the captains, and each company will prime and load as in the Second Division of the company exercise, Part I. No. 81. This is the uniform mode of loading by battalion; but the Third Division may be occasionally practised when loading by independent files. When the commander perceives that the companies are all loaded, and have come to the shoulder, he will give the caution—

Col. *Battalion will fire by independent files.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—By files from the right of companies—Commence firing.*

At this command each captain and first sergeant will retire two paces in rear of the rear rank, and all the other officers take post as directed for battle order. The captain will then give the order, *First file—Ready—Commence firing.* At the word *ready*, each file on the right of companies will bring their pieces to the recover, and cock them, and the rear man will step eight inches to the right. At the word *commence firing*, they aim and fire together. And

Digitized by Google

the remaining files will spring their pieces to the recover, and cock them in succession, as soon as the files on their right, shall bring theirs down to the aim. This must be performed in quick succession from right to left of each company. Each file, after firing, will proceed to prime and load and fire again, without the word, and without bringing the piece to the shoulder, continuing thus until he hears the ruffle of the drum, or the caution to cease firing; after which each file that is loaded will immediately bring his piece to the shoulder, and those that have just fired, and those that are loading, will complete the loading of their pieces, and come to the shoulder, and the rear rank step again to their places and cover the men of the front rank.

The bearers of colours, and their guard, will retire in such a manner that their front rank may be dressed on the rear rank of the battalion; and the guard do not fire, but remain shouldered during this exercise.

Through all the firings, the officers must pay particular attention that the men do not leave their places while loading; it being a common fault for them to step to the rear or turn round, while performing this important part of duty. They must also see that each private level his piece properly in the firings, as this is all important. The field officers, as well as all others, must be in rear while this is performing. It is not to avoid danger, that the officers are forbid remaining in front during the firings; but this part of the exercise should be performed with a view to an engagement, when prudence would teach us to retire to the rear, and not unnecessarily expose ourselves to a double fire.

Digitized by Google

TO FIRE BY PLATOONS.

Col. *Battalion will fire by platoons.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—Fire by platoons—Commence firing.*
Major. *Left wing—Fire by platoons—Commence firing.*

The firing by platoons will commence on the right of each wing. As soon as the caution is given *commence firing*, the first platoon of the first light-infantry company, and the first platoon of the left wing, will fire together, as near as may be, by order of the officer commanding the company. The remaining platoons will fire in succession by order of the officer commanding the platoon, corresponding with each other as near as practicable. Each platoon, as soon as they have fired, will receive the word to *prime* and *load*; after which they are brought to the shoulder by the platoon officer, and wait the next order.

TO FIRE BY COMPANIES.

Col. *Battalion will fire by companies.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—Fire by companies—Commence firing.*

This species of firing will also commence on the right of each wing; the captains of each company giving the order to their respective companies to *fire*, and also to *prime* and *load*, and *shoulder arms*. No officer will give the caution to his company, till the company on his right have fired.

TO FIRE BY GRAND DIVISIONS.

Col. *Battalion will fire by grand divisions.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—Fire by grand divisions—Commence firing.*

This will also commence from the right of each wing, in the manner as before described. The cap-

Digitized by Google

tains commanding grand divisions being on the right of each, will give the word to each in succession as before.

TO FIRE BY WINGS.

Col. *Battalion will fire by wings.*
Lt. Col. *Right wing—Ready—Aim—Fire. Prime and load. Shoulder arms.*

The major will wait until the right wing have fired; he then gives the same order to the left wing.

TO FIRE BY BATTALION.

Col. *Battalion will fire as one. Battalion—Ready—Aim—Fire. Shoulder arms.*

After the firings are completed, the order should be given to *search arms*, and each piece discharged, or the powder thrown out of the pan, and the pieces well secured, before any further exercise is performed, that all accidents may be avoided.

In performing the firings, the pieces should occasionally be brought down obliquely to the right and left, and the rules of the oblique firings attended to, as directed in the Drill.

To perform the firings correctly, it will be of the utmost importance that the officers at all times give the word distinctly, and with the same pause between them. If this be strictly attended to, there will be no difficulty in firing together; and indeed men may be trained to fire together without the word, by observing the same length of time.

The firings generally complete the exercises of the day; and no more remains but to return the colours to the place where they are to be lodged, which may be done in the same manner as they are brought on parade.

But to return the colours in this manner would

Digitized by Google

occupy so much time, and as no benefit is likely to result from this formality, I think it better to return them without form, and in the following manner:— The colours will be cased or furled, and returned by their bearers, accompanied by the sergeant of their guard, and conducted by the sergeant-major to the place of deposite without music, and received by one of the field-officers, and the sergeants dismissed to their respective companies.

Digitized by Google

INSTRUCTIONS FOR OFFICERS ON DAYS OF OFFICER MEETINGS.

The law makes it necessary that all the officers, non-commissioned officers and musicians of the battalion, meet at least one day in each year, for the purpose of instruction. And no one presumes to dispute the necessity, nor the utility of such a measure, if properly conducted. And so anxious are the officers to attain a knowledge of their duty, that they will suffer many inconveniences, and incur great expense to attend those meetings. But for the want of a system of exercise, and also from an insufficient experience in the officers to give instruction, these days of exercise are rendered almost entirely useless; and we return home as ignorant as we came.

Here I would suggest the utility of establishing *Military Schools*, in the limits of each battalion, to meet in different parts, under the direction of some experienced officer, who is capable of instructing the officers in the various branches of their duty. This would greatly facilitate our discipline; and a few winter evenings, spent in this way, would make an astonishing alteration in the appearance of our militia companies. Here, the private as well as the officer has opportunity to acquaint himself with his duty, and the officers of every grade may add practice to theory. This in a great measure would supersede the necessity of officer meetings, and would save us much time and application. And when called out for exercise, it would be a day of exhibition, as well as a day of instruction.

In the subsequent instructions under this head, it must be presumed that the field-officers and adjutant, at least, are competent to give instruction in every

Digitized by Google

branch of duty. But where this is not the case, others must be obtained that are thus qualified; and each officer must put himself under their instruction, whatever may be their grade.

The law imposes a fine on each non-commissioned officer and musician who shall neglect to attend the officers' meeting. It will therefore be the duty of the commanding officer of each company present on those days, to make out a list, as soon as ascertained, of the names of all the non-commissioned officers and musicians, who belong to his company, that are absent; which list is to be given to the adjutant. And that it may be known who of the commissioned officers are absent, it will be necessary to insert the names of those likewise. This will supersede the necessity of making a roll, and calling it.

When the officers are to be paraded for exercise, which should be as early as possible; the adjutant will parade the non-commissioned officers, with their muskets, in one rank, agreeable to the rules of forming company, without reference to the company to which they belong; and the major will parade the commissioned officers in the same manner.

If the non-commissioned officers have had little or no experience in the drill, and they are to be drilled in the first principles; it will be necessary to divide them into squads of six or eight in each, and order the most experienced amongst them to teach them the drill, under the direction of one of the field-officers and adjutant. But if they are well advanced in the manual and platoon exercise, they may be taught in one rank, by the lieutenant-colonel or major.

The commissioned officers will be extended to half arm's length, and put through the sword-manual by the colonel; and they will be taught by separate motions, and each motion particularly explained.

Digitized by Google

The musicians will be detached a considerable distance from the officers, and instructed in their particular duty by the music-majors.

After having exercised the several bodies a considerable time in this way, and if it be thought proper to relieve them, the non-commissioned officers will be formed in a line as before; and both companies wheeled into column, and formed together, with the non-commissioned officers in rear, and the musicians in front. Three markers will then be detached, and the flags prepared for that purpose, will be given them, and they posted on the left of the column; one in front, one in centre, and one in rear. They may then be wheeled into line, and practice in dressing. They should then be taught the wheelings; how to break a line by wheeling backward, and to form a line by wheeling forward.

They will then be wheeled into column, and marched to the front, and taught in wheeling on the march, and to dress by the left, and also to dress the left flank; and various other parts of duty pointed out in the drill of the company.

Here I would again remark, as it is so important, and cannot be too deeply impressed on the minds of the officers and soldiers, that the only possible way to march correctly, is to know and understand which flank is to govern; and which way they are to dress and which way to feel, on the march. And officers must be particularly careful at all times to remember, that the left of the column is the governing flank when the right is in front, and the right when the left is in front; and they are always to feel and dress by the governing flank.

It will never be found useful to practice any part of the exercise after the men have become wearied. They should therefore frequently be ordered to stand at ease; and perhaps after performing the forego-

Digitized by Google

ing exercise, it will be necessary to dismiss for a short time.

It is erroneously supposed by some, that when an officer has obtained a commission, he is excused from any further knowledge of the musket-exercise. But so far from this being the case, it is expected that as an officer advances in command, he will advance in knowledge in every branch of duty. It will therefore be necessary for the commissioned officers to exercise a part of the day with the muskets of the non-commissioned officers.

When the officers are again paraded, the commissioned officers will parade with muskets, and without their side arms; and the non-commissioned officers without arms.

The commissioned officers will then be put through the manual and platoon exercise, and the oblique firings; and the non-commissioned officers will be taught in facing, wheeling, dressing, and filing into column to the front and rear; and in various other movements which are performed on the ground.

When the commissioned officers have performed the musket-exercise sufficiently, they will again receive their swords, and the non-commissioned officers their muskets; and all be paraded on one line by companies, without reference to size. Each company of officers will be paraded in one line, agreeable to their posts in battalion, with the captains of each on the right; and the other officers according to grade, from right to left.

The colours, if present, should now be given to the sergeants designed to carry them on field day, and posted in centre of the line; and the markers also posted as before.

The company will then be wheeled into column, with the right in front; and one of the sergeants of each section of company-officers, posted on the left, who is to regulate the left flank.

Digitized by Google

They will then perform the various movements of a battalion; and the captains will march in front of their respective sections, and give the words of command as applied to a company. The movements which are designed for field days, should be particularly attended to, as also their explanation, that there be no mistake in their performance.

The officers will also be practised in the salutes, both in standing and passing salutes; and the officers will severally take turns of marching in front of the section, and giving the proper words of command.

Some person should be posted in a convenient place to receive the salute of the officers; and each one will pass the salute each time they march past, whether in front or in the section.

Previous to those days of exercise, the colonel should fix upon some plan of movements for field-day, which should be submitted to the officers at this time, and which they should copy; and obtain every information necessary to the exact performance of their duty.

These officer-meetings usually take place after the colonel receives his battalion order, which order will then be distributed to each captain; and also the blank returns, and morning reports, and the proper instructions given concerning the filling out of each.

Digitized by Google

PART V.

REGULATIONS

FOR

LIGHT-INFANTRY

AND

RIFLEMEN.

Digitized by Google

MILITIA TACTICS.

PART V.

REGULATIONS FOR LIGHT-INFANTRY AND RIFLEMEN.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

THE exercise and movements of the light-infantry are the same as the infantry; and which will be found in Part I. and II. But they should acquaint themselves with all the movements of the riflemen which are described in this Part. And the riflemen should also frequently practice in the movements of the infantry, and in two ranks.

The light-infantry companies, when performing duty with the battalion, exclusive of the rifle companies, will uniformly parade in one rank, and one on each flank of the battalion, according to seniority.

Since writing the foregoing, the author has learned that the rifle companies of this State are attached to the infantry battalions, and are to be posted on the extreme left of the battalion. This will cause a different disposition of the light-infantry in those battalions where the rifle companies are located; and for which I shall make provision hereafter.

As the light-infantry are to exercise and manœuvre the same as the battalion companies, it will be unnecessary to treat of them in this Part, any further than to give some general directions respecting their duty on field-days, which I shall do in its order.

Digitized by Google

It will be indispensable that the rifle companies acquaint themselves with all the movements of the battalion, as they are to do duty as companies of the line; but their manual and platoon exercise is peculiar to themselves, and which I shall first treat of in this Part; and then the various movements of a company of riflemen in one rank, which is equally applicable to companies of infantry, if also in one rank. And then close this Part by pointing out their posts in line.

FIRST DIVISION.

MANUAL AND PLATOON EXERCISE FOR THE RIFLE.

THE POSITION OF THE SOLDIER AT ORDERED ARMS.

The position of the rifleman is the same as in Part I. The rifle is held in the same manner as the musket, excepting the front of the breech is to be even with the toe of the right foot; the arms straight.

Shoulder—Arms. Three motions.

1st. Raise the rifle with the right hand, the height of the *advance* of the *musket*, and at the same time seize the rifle with the left hand, immediately above the feather-spring.

2d. Drop the right hand to the lock, and seize it under the guard, with the fore-finger in front, thumb above the guard, and the other fingers in rear; the right arm at full length.

3d. Drop the left hand to its original position on the left thigh.

Present—Arms. One motion.

Spring the rifle with the right hand, opposite the left eye, the ramrod to the front, shifting the fingers

Digitized by Google

of the right hand in front of the small stock, and under the guard; the thumb in rear under the lock; and seize the rifle at the same time with the left hand above the lock, with the fore-arm square across the body; and hold the rifle, with the right arm nearly extended, without moving the feet.

Shoulder—Arms. Two motions.

1st. The rifle is carried again to the right side; striking it into the hollow of the right shoulder with the left hand; and shift the fingers of the right hand, and hold the rifle at the shoulder as before.

2d. The left hand quits the rifle and is brought to the left thigh.

Trail—Arms. Two motions.

1st. Drop the muzzle to the front, and seize the rifle with the left hand at the middle pipe, and hold it on an angle of 45 degrees to the front.

2d. Let go the lock, and seize the rifle with the right hand close over the sight, and trail it on the right side at arm's length; holding the rifle at the same slope. At the same time drop the left hand to the left side.

Change—Hands. Two motions.

1st. Carry the rifle to the front with the right hand, and seize it with the left hand just below the right; holding the rifle perpendicularly in front of the body.

2d. Let go the right hand, and trail the rifle on the left side with the left hand, the same as before on the right.

Re-change—Hands. Two motions.

1st. Carry the rifle to the front with the left hand, as before with the right, letting it slip through the hand, and seize it with the right hand below the left, in the same place where the left hand before held.

Digitized by Google

2. Trail the rifle at the right side, and drop the left hand.

Order—Arms. One motion.

Drop the breech of the rifle even with the right toe, and resume the position of *ordered arms.*

Trail—Arms. One motion.

Spring up the rifle and catch it with the right hand, in the same manner as held before at the trail.

Present—Arms. One motion.

Spring up the rifle with the right hand, and receive it with the left just above the lock, and the right round the small stock, and hold it at the present as before.

Change—Hands. One motion.

Let go the small stock with the right hand, and let the rifle slip through the left, so far as to obtain the proper balance, and trail it on the left side.

Present—Arms. One motion.

Spring up the rifle with the left hand, and receive it with the right at the present, as before directed.

Trail—Arms. One motion.

Let go the small stock with the right hand, and carry the rifle with the left hand to the right, and receive it with the right in the proper place, and come to the trail on the right side.

Shoulder—Arms. Two motions.

1st. Throw up the rifle with the right hand, and with the same receive it at the small stock round the lock, and the left hand strikes the rifle into the hollow of the shoulder; the left fore-arm lying square across the body.

2d. Drop the left hand to the left side.

Digitized by Google

Secure—Arms. Two motions.

1st. Carry the rifle to the front with the right hand, and receive it with the left, as at the present.

2d. Shift the thumb of the right hand in rear of the small stock under the lock, and the fingers in front, and raise the rifle a little, and turn it with the right thumb; the barrel to the front; holding it perpendicularly with the left hand; then, without any pause, throw the breech back under the left arm, and drop the muzzle to the front, and hold the rifle at the secure, the same as a musket; and at the same time drop the right hand to the right side.

Trail—Arms. One motion.

When the order is given to *trail arms*, from the *secure*, it is done on that side, and with that hand which holds the rifle. As the hand which holds the rifle, is to be turned well on the underside, it is brought to the trail by merely turning the barrel up, and extending the left arm.

Secure—Arms. One motion.

To *secure arms* from the *trail*, it is always to be done with that hand, and under that arm which holds the rifle, without any assistance of the other.

At the word *secure arms*, the barrel is turned down by rounding the wrist; then raise it under the arm, and drop the muzzle to the front, and hold it at the secure.

Present—Arms. One motion.

Let the breech drop to the front and turn the barrel to the face, and receive the small stock with the right hand; holding the piece perpendicularly as before.

Trail—Arms. One motion.

As before. When the order is given to *trail arms*,

Digitized by Google

from the *present*, it is always to be done on the right side. If it be wished to trail arms on the left side, from the present, the order is given, *change hands.*

Shoulder—Arms. Two motions.

Performed as before described.

Support—Arms. One motion.

The rifle is brought across the body with the guard upward, by bending the right arm; the left hand takes hold of the right wrist.

Carry—Arms. One motion.

The rifle is carried to the right side with a quick motion, and the left hand dropped to its place.

Order—Arms. Three motions.

1st. The left hand seizes the rifle square across the body.

2d. The right hand is raised and seizes the rifle immediately above the left.

3d. The left hand quits its hold, and the rifle is brought to the ground with the right, the left hand dropped to its place, and both arms straight.

Fix—Bayonet. Three motions.

1st. Drop the muzzle in front of the body without moving the breech, and receive it with the left hand square across the body, holding the barrel to the rear.

2d. Let go the rifle with the right hand, and draw the bayonet, holding the sheath with the left elbow; fix it to the muzzle; then drop the right hand to its place, and carry the rifle to the right shoulder with the left.

3d. Drop the left hand.

Shoulder—Arms. Three motions.

Performed as before.

Digitized by Google

Charge—Bayonet. One motion.

Drop the muzzle to the front, and seize the rifle with the left hand, as in the first motion of the *trail*, and seize the small-stock with the right hand, and at the same time half face to the right by turning on both heels. The rifle is held horizontal, the lock against the hip.

Shoulder—Arms. Two motions.

1st. Carry the rifle with the left hand to the right shoulder, and shift the fingers of the right hand round the lock, as before at the shoulder.

2d. Drop the left hand.

Order—Arms. Three motions.

As before.

Charge—Bayonet. One motion.

Spring up the rifle with the right hand, and receive it at the middle band with the left, and at the small stock with the right; and at the same time turn on the heels to the right and come to the charge.

Trail—Arms. One motion.

Quit the rifle with the left hand, and catch it with the right just below the sight, or where it will balance in the hand, and extend the right arm full length at the trail, the left hand to the left side, and face to the front.

Order—Arms. One motion.

As before described.

Unfix—Bayonet. Three motions.

1st. The same as the first motion of fix bayonet.

2d. Disengage the bayonet with the right hand,

Digitized by Google

and return it under the left arm, and replace the rifle at the right shoulder as before.

3d. Drop the left hand.

Rest. One motion.

Step back with the right foot six or eight inches to the rear, and bend the left knee; drop the rifle across the left arm, and the left hand hold of the right wrist.

Attention.

At this word resume the position of ordered arms.

Stand at ease.

At the word *stand at ease*, the soldier may be allowed to move his feet and hands, and rest himself in any manner he may choose without leaving his place; which must not be done without liberty from a commissioned officer.

PLATOON EXERCISE FOR THE RIFLE.

Remarks.

The platoon exercise of the rifle is divided into two divisions only, whereas the musket exercise is divided into three; but the rifle cannot be loaded without using the rod, of course, the two first divisions are all that can be practised in the rifle exercise.

The several motions of the first division are performed by separate words of command. The second, by one word only. In the drill, the firing will be performed in line and by word of command; but after having had considerable experience in this way, they will be advanced to the front by files and fire without the word, as hereafter explained.

Digitized by Google

FIRST DIVISION OF FIRING.

Attention. Shoulder—Arms.

Prepare to load. One motion.

Drop the muzzle of the rifle to the front, and seize it with the left hand just above the lock, and hold the rifle horizontal, the right thumb against the hammer, and elbow against the breech, the lock inclining a little to the body, that part of the priming may enter the barrel. At the same time half face to the right by turning on both heels; the right toe pointing along the line, and the left to the front.

Open—Pan. One motion.

Throw open the pan with the thumb, and rest the hand on the small stock with the fingers clinched, waiting in that position for the next word of command.

Handle—Cartridge. One motion.

Drop the hand to the cartridge box and draw out the cartridge, which is then brought to the mouth, and the top twisted off, and brought to the pan.

Prime. One motion.

The priming is shaken into the pan, and in doing which look to the powder to see when the pan is full; then place the three last fingers back of the hammer, and immediately after look to the officer commanding.

Shut—Pan. One motion.

The pan is shut by the three last fingers, holding the cartridge between the thumb and fore finger; the right hand is then placed on the small stock, back of the lock, holding it between the three fingers and ball of the hand.

About. One motion.

The soldier faces to the front, the breech of the

Digitized by Google

rifle is dropped to the front and placed between the heels, and the barrel between the knees, which must be bent for that purpose; barrel to the front; the left hand takes hold near the muzzle; the right hand with the cartridge immediately under, ready to enter the cartridge at the word.

Load. One motion.

Enter the cartridge into the barrel, and seize the butt of the rod with the thumb and fore-finger; elbow down.

Draw—Rod. Two motions.

1st. Extend the right arm upward, full length; drop the hand to the muzzle, and seize the rod at the centre, backhanded; the thumb in front, and fingers extended upward in rear.

2d. Draw the rod from the stock, and turn it with the arm extended, the left then quits the rifle, and grasps the rod the breadth of the hand from the butt, and the right hand slipped down close to the left; the rod is then entered one inch into the muzzle.

Home. One motion.

The cartridge is forced down by both hands; the left then seizes the rifle at the muzzle, the knees straightened, and the right hand gives two or three strokes with the rod; then hold the small end between the thumb and finger, close to the muzzle.

Return—Rod. Two motions.

1st. Throw up the rod, and catch it at the centre with the right hand, the same as when drawing.

2d. Draw the rod entirely out, and turn it again with the arm extended, and enter it into the stock, full length, and drop the left hand, and seize the rifle with the arm extended, and pause with the edge of the hand on the butt of the rod.

Digitized by Google

Shoulder—Arms. Two motions.

1st. The left hand brings the rifle to the right shoulder, by turning the guard to the front, and the barrel to the rear; the right hand receives it round the lock.

2d. Drop the left hand.

Ready. Two motions.

1st. At this word the rifle is brought by the right hand before the centre of the body, the left seizing it so that the little finger may rest on the feather-spring, and the fore-finger raised the height of the chin; the right thumb on the cock, and the fingers under the guard, the elbow up.

2d. Cock the rifle by bringing down the elbow, and clinch the small-stock with the right hand, keeping the rifle perpendicular.

Aim. One motion.

The rifleman half faces to the right, by turning on the left heel, and stepping back the right foot about eight inches, the left knee bent; and the rifle brought to the aim by dropping the muzzle to the front without shifting the position of the left hand, which holds the rifle close before the lock; the butt pressed hard against the shoulder; the right elbow raised even with the shoulder, and the fore-finger on the trigger, the head bent and inclined to the small-stock, taking aim through the sight.

Fire. One motion.

As soon as the rifleman hears the word *fire*, he will pull briskly, and immediately after drop the rifle to the priming position, and bring up the right foot to the side of the left, toe pointing to the right, and the left remaining to the front; the right thumb and knuckle of the fore-finger seizes the head of the cock, ready to half cock at the word.

Digitized by Google

If the company are practising in the drill, and the officer wishes to put them through this division again, he will give the word, *half cock arms*, then *handle cartridge*, and perform the motions as before. The company should frequently be put through the oblique firings to the right and left, and also to the rear by facing about.

When the company have had sufficient experience in the First Division, and the officer wishes to put them through the Second, and the men being at the priming position, he will give the word, *Shoulder—Arms.*

The officer will make considerable pause between the word *shoulder*, and *arms*, that the private may have an opportunity to half cock his rifle, and shut pan, before the word *arms*, that they may come to the shoulder together.

After the rifle is half cocked, and the pan shut, it is brought to the shoulder, the same as from the charge bayonet.

SECOND DIVISION OF FIRING.

Prime and load.

At this word the rifleman half faces to the right, and brings his rifle to the priming position as before; then open pan and handle cartridge, and perform all the motions of loading as before, without waiting for any further word of command. When the rifle is loaded, the private will pause with the right hand on the butt of the rod, without coming to the shoulder.

Shoulder—Arms.

As before.

The men are now put through the firings in this Division the same as in the First; the word each time being given in the priming position, *prime and*

Digitized by Google

load. This is the habitual way of loading a rifle in action or exercise; but the First Division must be practised in the drill, that the officer may have an opportunity to correct every improper motion in loading; it being more important that a rifle be properly than expeditiously loaded.

When the company are sufficiently drilled in the platoon exercise by word of command, they should be put through the firings by files without the word, as hereafter described.

When the company fire by files, they will advance a prescribed distance to the front, and receive the words, *ready—aim*, and the rifleman will fire without the word. The firings may commence from one or both flanks, or from the centre. The company should also be put through the firings, advancing and retiring, by company, and by signal of the drum.

TO FIRE BY FILES.

Company will fire by files from the right.

Commence firing.

At this word the first file on the right will advance three paces and halt, with his rifle at the shoulder. The word is then given—

Ready, or a signal from the drum.

On hearing which, the rifle is brought in front of the body, and cocked as before. Then the second signal, or the word,

Aim, is given.

At which the rifleman will aim and fire, and the right hand immediately quits the rifle, and he faces to the right-about; the left hand swings the rifle round into a horizontal position, with the barrel downwards, and the rifleman immediately steps to

Digitized by Google

his post in line; and in facing about brings his rifle into the priming position, half cocks, and proceeds to prime and load, and brings his rifle to the shoulder without waiting for any word of command.

As soon as the first file has fired, the second will advance the same distance directly to the front, and receive the same words of command; and after firing, he faces to the rear, resumes his post in line, and proceeds to load as the first file. Thus the files will continue from right to left till all the files have fired and again loaded.

They will then commence firing from the right and left, the caution being given—

Company will fire by files from the right and left.

Commence firing.

At this word one file from the right and left will advance at the same time, and receive the same caution, and fire together, and again resume their places in line, and proceed to prime and load as before. The two next files will advance in like manner, as soon as the two first have fired, continuing thus to the centre.

In the same manner double files may be advanced from the centre, and perform the firings in the same way; and if that is to be the last time firing, the officer will give the additional caution—

Company will fire by double files from the centre without re-loading.

Commence firing.

At this word the two centre files will advance three paces, and receive the proper cautions. fire, and return to their places in line; bring their rifles to the priming position, half cock, shut pan, and come to

Digitized by Google

the shoulder without loading and without the word. Thus the files will advance in succession, to the flanks, by two files advancing at the same time as before.

TO FIRE WHILE ADVANCING.

Company will fire advancing.

The rifles being loaded, and the men dressed in a line, will receive the word—

Forward—March.

When the company will move to the front in line, and open their files a little from the centre, that each may march independent, without dressing by the centre. When the officer perceives that the company have gained sufficient ground to the front, he commands—

Halt.

Company—Ready.

Aim.

And each man will fire as soon as he gets fixed on his object, without waiting for the word, and drop his rifle to the priming position. The order is then given—

Prime and load.

Which is performed as before, and pause without coming to the shoulder.

Shoulder—Arms.

Forward—March.

Halt.

Company—Ready.

Aim.

These motions and movements are executed as

Digitized by Google

before described, and may be continued as long as the officer thinks proper.

TO FIRE WHILE RETREATING.

Company will fire retreating.

The company being in a line, facing the enemy, and files extended, and rifles loaded, will receive the following words of command.

Company—Ready.

Aim.

Right—About.

Forward—March.

Prime.

Each file will fire independent, as he gets fixed on his object, and immediately drop his rifle to the priming position. When he hears the word, *right—about*, he lets go the rifle with the right hand, and turns on his left heel, and trails his rifle in the left hand; and at the word *march*, moves to the rear; and on hearing the word *prime*, the rifle is brought under the left arm in a horizontal position, and half-cocked; then handle cartridge, prime and shut pan; then drop the rifle again to the trail, holding the cartridge in the right hand.

When the company have marched a proper distance to the rear, the officer commands—

Halt.

Left—About.

At this word the rifleman will turn on his left heel.

Digitized by Google

and drop his rifle to the loading position; when he will again receive the following words of command—

Load.

Shoulder—Arms.

Ready.

Aim.

Right—About.

Forward—March.

Prime.

Halt.

Left—About.

Load.

Shoulder—Arms.

This mode of firing may be continued as long as the officer thinks proper; and when completed, the files will be brought to the shoulder without loading, and closed to the centre.

SECOND DIVISION.

MODE OF FORMING A COMPANY OF LIGHT-INFANTRY OR RIFLEMEN; POSTING OF OFFICERS, AND VARIOUS MOVEMENTS IN ONE RANK.

FORMING COMPANY.

A company of light infantry or riflemen are formed in the same manner as a battalion company; they both in the first instance being formed in one rank, as described in Part I. But every company should practise forming in two and three ranks, as it may sometimes be found necessary.

Digitized by Google

POSITION OF OFFICERS.

For the position of officers when the company are in one rank, and in various situations, see Plate I. and II.; for light-infantry movements. This position of officers, is equally applicable to all companies when in one rank, with three commissioned officers, and eight non-commissioned officers.

I have found it useful to post one of the non-commissioned officers, or an experienced private in front of the music, whose duty it is to march square to the front, and when wheeling to make right angles.

EVOLUTIONS FOR LIGHT-INFANTRY AND RIFLEMEN.

These movements are more particularly calculated for rifle companies than for light-infantry, but they are equally practicable by all foot companies in one rank, and should be well understood by the light-infantry.

In all movements in one rank, I shall use the term sub-divisions instead of platoons; as the company are divided into four equal parts, and as one half is allowed by all to be a division, I think that, properly speaking, one fourth is a sub-division.

These movements are all to be performed in quick time, and frequently in double quick time; and the word. *march*, must be qualified by *quick time*, or *double quick time*.

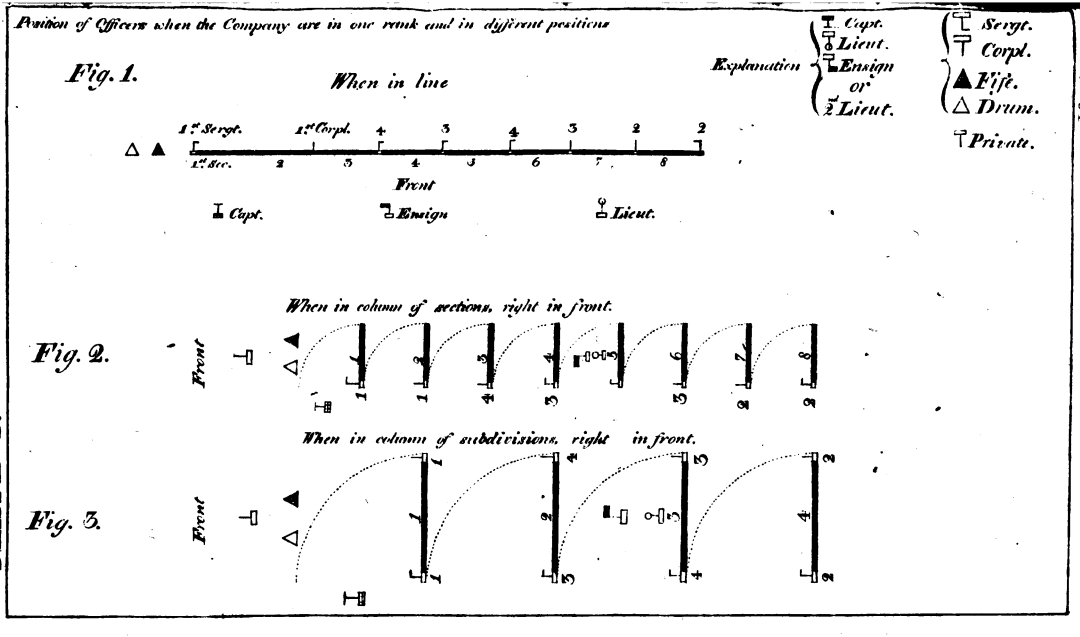
In performing these movements by way of instruction, the musicians should be detached from the company, and play quick time; and when the company are ordered to march *double quick time*, the drums should roll.

The *double quick time* applicable to these changes, is 150, or 160 paces per minute, but in the drill,

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

PLATE I.


Position of Officers when the Company are in one rank and in different positions
Fig. 1.
When in line
1st Sergt.
1st Corpl.
1st Sec.
Front
Capt.
Ensign
Lieut.
Explanation
Capt.
Lieut.
Ensign or 2 Lieut.
Sergt.
Corpl.
Fife.
Drum.
Private.
Fig. 2.
When in column of sections, right in front.
Front
Fig. 3.
When in column of subdivisions, right in front.
Front
I. Sanford Sc.

companies must not be allowed to exceed 140 or 150 steps to the minute, and not lengthen the step beyond 28 or 30 inches.

TO ADVANCE OR RETIRE BY FILES FROM THE FLANKS, OR CENTRE OF THE COMPANY.

MANŒUVRE 1st. *Company will advance by files from the right.*

Right—Face.

All the files face to the right except the right, which remains facing to the front. The first sergeant takes post in front of the right file, the commissioned officers on the left of the line opposite their places.

Quick time—March.

At the word *march*, the sergeant leads off directly to the front, and the files follow in close order, and all turn to the left on the ground occupied by the first file.

MANŒUVRE 2d. *Company will advance by files from the left.*

Left—Face.

All face to the left, but the left hand file, and the second sergeant steps in front of him.

Quick time—March.

The sergeant leads off to the front as before, and the files turn to the right at the left flank of the company.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE 3d. *Company will advance by files from the centre.*

To the centre—Face.

All face to the centre excepting the left hand file of the first division, and the right hand file of the second, which remain facing to the front; the first sergeant will take post in front of the left hand file of the first division, and the second sergeant in front of the right hand file of the second division.

Quick time—March.

At this word the two sergeants lead off to the front, and the files follow in two lines in close order, and files dressed by each other.

MANŒUVRE 4th. *Company will retire by files from the right.*

Right—Face.

The whole face to the right, and the right hand file which faces to the right-about; the first sergeant steps in front of the leading file.

Quick time—March.

They move forward in succession, and in the same order as when advancing.

MANŒUVRE 5th. *Company will retire by files from the left.*

Left—Face.

The left hand file faces to the left-about, and the second sergeant takes post in front of him; the remainder face to the left.

Digitized by Google

Quick time—March.

The sergeant leads off to the rear as before.

TO FORM COMPANY IN DIFFERENT POSITIONS WHEN FILING FROM EITHER FLANK OR CENTRE, TO THE FRONT OR REAR.

TO FORM ON THE LEADING FILE WHETHER ADVANCING OR RETIRING.

WHEN ADVANCING FROM THE RIGHT.

MANŒUVRE 6th. *To the front form—Double quick time—March.*

The leading file halts, and the sergeant steps to his right; the other files half face to the left, (more or less, according to the distance from the front,) and form upon the left of the leading file, in double quick time.

MANŒUVRE 7th. *To the right form—Double quick time—March.*

The front file faces to the right, and takes one pace to the front and halts; the other files pass him in rear, and turn into line in succession as they are uncovered from the right, and halt as they arrive in line, without waiting for the word.

MANŒUVRE 8th. *To the right-about form—Double quick time—March.*

The leading file will step one side-step to the right, and face to the right-about, and halt; every other file turns round in succession and forms on the left of the first.

WHEN ADVANCING FROM THE LEFT.

MANŒUVRE 9th. *To the front form—Double quick time—March.*

Digitized by Google

The leading file halts; the other files half face to the right, and form upon his right.

MANŒUVRE 10th. *To the left form—Double quick time—March.*

The leading file faces to the left; steps one pace to the front, and halts; and the others form upon the right.

MANŒUVRE 11th. *To the left-about form—Double quick time—March.*

The left file steps one side-step to the left, and faces to the left-about, and the other files follow and form on his right.

WHEN RETIRING FROM THE RIGHT.

MANŒUVRE 12th. *To the front form—Double quick time—March.*

The leading file halts and faces to the left-about; the remainder half face to the right, and move past the line, then face to the left-about, and dress up by those ready formed.

Forming to the right or right-about, when retiring, is the same as when advancing.

WHEN RETIRING FROM THE LEFT.

MANŒUVRE 13th. *To the front form—Double quick time—March.*

The leading file will halt and face to the right-about, and the remainder half face to the left and pass the line of formation; then face to the right-about, and dress forward.

Digitized by Google

WHEN RETIRING FROM THE CENTRE.

MANŒUVRE 14th. *To the front form—Double quick time—March.*

When the company advance or retire by files from the centre, it is performed in double files only; and when the order is given *to form to the front*, the two leading files halt and face to the right and left-about, and dress on the intended line; and the remainder half face to the right and left, and pass the line as before, and dress to the front.

MANŒUVRE 15th. *To the right form—Double quick time—March.*

The first division will close their files, halt, front, and dress by the right; the leading man of the second division will turn to the left and pass the line of the first division; then face to the left-about, and dress forward by the first division. The other files turn to the left in succession as they arrive past the line ready formed, and dress up as the former.

TO RETIRE BY FILES FROM THE RIGHT AND LEFT OF THE COMPANY, OR FROM THE RIGHT OR LEFT OF SUB-DIVISIONS.

MANŒUVRE 16th. *Company will retire by files from the right and left—To the right and left face—Quick time—March.*

At the word *face*, the divisions face outward from the centre, the right and left hand files face to the right and left-about, and at the word *March*, both divisions file to the rear, following the leading file of the right and left, which must be particularly careful to march at right angles with the original line, that when ordered to form, the line shall not be too much contracted or extended.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE 17th. *Company will retire by files from the right of sub-divisions. Right face—Quick time—March.*

All face to the right, except the right hand file of each sub-division, which will face to the right and left-about; at the word *march*, all file to the rear after the leading files, which must keep at wheeling distance from each other, and equally advanced.

TO FORM COMPANY WHEN RETIRING FROM THE RIGHT AND LEFT.

MANŒUVRE 18th. *To the front form—Double quick time—March.*

The two leading files halt, and face to the right and left-about; the remainder half face inwards, and march past the line; face to the right and left-about, and dress forward.

TO FORM COMPANY WHEN RETIRING FROM THE RIGHT OF SUB-DIVISIONS.

MANŒUVRE 19th. *To the front form—Double quick time—March.*

The leading files being in a line, will halt and come to the left-about; and the remainder half face to the right, and move past the line, and form as in Manœuvre 12th.

WHEN RETIRING FROM THE LEFT OF SUB-DIVISIONS.

MANŒUVRE 20th. *To the front form—Double quick time—March.*

The leading files halt, and come to the right-about, and dress by each other, and the remainder half face to the left and form on their right.

Digitized by Google

PLATE II.

Fig. 1.

When in open column of sections, left in front.

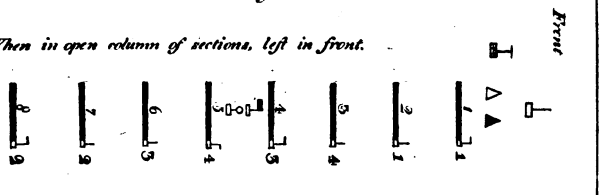


Fig. 2.

When in open column of subdivision, left in front.

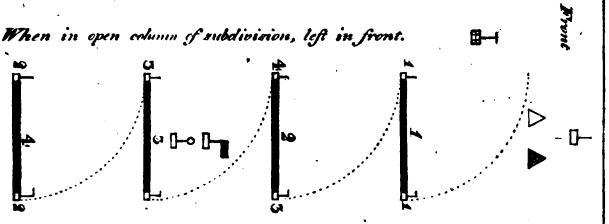
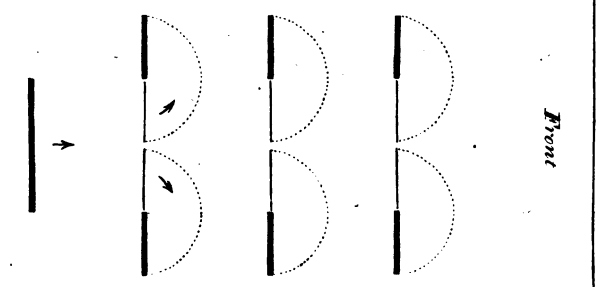


Fig. 3.

Manoeuvre No. 1.



I. Sanford Sc.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

Digitized by Google

MOVEMENT OF A COMPANY IN COLUMN, FORMED IN ONE RANK.

MANŒUVRE No. 1.

TO CHANGE FRONT OF A COLUMN OF SUB-DIVISIONS WHEN ON THE MARCH.

Mark Time.

Column will countermarch and change front—By sections from the centre outwards wheel—March. See Plate II.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

Previous to the words being given to *mark time*, the officer should have some concerted signal for the music to beat time, that the words of command may be heard; the signal being given, the fifes will play and the drums beat time when the left foot strikes the ground. As soon as the word is given to *mark time*, the men stop short, an mark time, without gaining ground, and see that they are dressed; and as soon as they hear the word *march*, the sub-divisions wheel outwards from the centre, by the two centre files forming a half circle to the right and left, and the sub-divisions will be facing to the rear; (See Plate II.) excepting the rear sub-division, which will not wheel, but move forward as soon as the word is given for the column to *wheel* and *march*.

As the rear sub division is many times the largest, it will be necessary for the officers on the right and left, to incline a little to the right and left, to give the rear room to march through in the intervals without crowding.

Each officer commanding a sub-division, will give the word inward wheel, as soon as the sub-divisions in

Digitized by Google

rear get in a line with their sections. The officers of each sub-division will change flanks as soon as they have past the column thus opened, by the commanding officer passing in front of his command, and the other in rear; when the column will then dress by the right as before observed. The music in this movement will not wheel nor face, but mark time until the sergeant, or private, (who is posted in front to regulate the movements, having faced to the company at the word *march*, and discovered that the sub-divisions have gained their distance,) faces again to the front and moves forward, when the music will follow.

MANŒUVRE No. 2.

TO CHANGE THE DIRECTION OF MARCH BY WHEELING OF SUB-DIVISIONS ON THE CENTRE FILE, TO THE RIGHT-ABOUT.

Mark Time.

By sub-divisions—On your centre file—To the right-about wheel—March. See Plate III.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

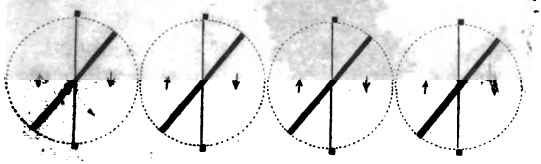
In this as well as the preceding movement, each one must be careful to mark time until the proper time to wheel or move to the front.

As soon as the word is given—*wheel*, the officers on the right and left, face to the right and left-about, or outwards from the sub-division; and as soon as the word is given—*March*, the remainder of the sub-division wheel round on the centre file, by the right stepping back and left forward, until they again come in a line with the officers, who do not wheel, but keep their posts on the right and left, and the sergeant will immediately give the word *forward*.

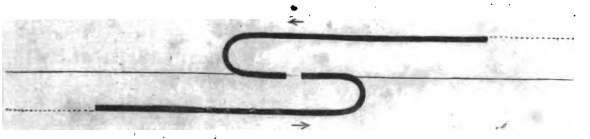
Digitized by Google

PLATE III.

Manoeuvre No. 2.

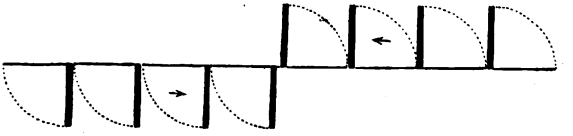


Manoeuvre No. 3.



Front

Manoeuvre No. 4.



Front

J. Sanford Sc.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

The music wheel at the same time, and march in rear of the column.

By this mode of changing front, the officer commanding each sub-division is kept on the commanding flank, which is agreeable to the system here laid down.

This may be countermarched as the first movement, by each sub-division wheeling outwards, and the music passing through in front.

Both of these movements may be practised in column of sections or sub-divisions, or larger or smaller bodies, as best suits the officer.

MANŒUVRE No. 3.

TO COUNTERMARCH A LINE, AND CHANGE FRONT.

Company will countermarch by files on the centre, and change front.

Divisions inward face.
One side-step to the right—March.
Countermarch and change front—Forward—March.
Halt—Front face. See Plate III.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

It must be previously noted where the centre of the company is, and when the word is given, *Divisions inward face*, all face to the centre; then at the order, all step to the right, which will open the files sufficient for each division to pass, and turn into line, and form on the original ground. The two centre files will turn to the left about, and form on the old line, facing each other; and the other files march and turn into line in succession.

Officers must be careful that the files do not close in such close order, but they may face without crowding.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 4.

CHANGE OF FRONT BY COUNTERMARCH OF SECTIONS ON THE CENTRE.

Second division—Right-about face.
Sections inward wheel—March.
Columns March.
Halt—Front face. See Plate III.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

Companies are divided into first and second divisions, sub-divisions, and sections. That half on the right of the centre is the first division, and that on the left the second.

So that when the word is given—*to the right-about face*, the division named faces to the rear; and when the word is given,—*march*, both divisions wheel to their present left, and halt. The first division will then be in column in front of the line, with the left in front, and the second in column in rear of the line, and right in front. At the word—*march*, both columns march at the same time, and as soon as the two centre sections have past each other on the line, they wheel to the left into line and dress; the remaining sections, as soon as they have passed the line already formed, wheel into line by order of the officer commanding the section.

The officer must be careful that the men mark time until the word is given—*halt*, if the music be playing. The line is then fronted by order of the officer commanding.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 5.

TO MARCH IN DIRECT ECHELON OF SECTIONS, TO FORM A LINE TO THE FRONT.

Company will advance in direct echelon of sections.

Mark time—March.

By sections from the right in succession—At half wheeling distance—March.

Echelon—Form a line.

Halt. See Plate IV.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

This is the echelon direct, to form in front, parallel, on a point distant, which the officer will have previously ascertained. It will be necessary to mark time that each one may get the step before moving to the front.

When the word is given for the first section to *march*, they will step off the full length of a step, and march direct to the front.

The officers commanding each remaining section, give the word—*forward*, as soon as they see that the section in front have gained the distance required.

As soon as the leading section have reached the point of formation, the officer commanding the company gives the order—*echelon form a line;* when the first section will mark time, and the remainder come up in succession, and dress by them.

It is to be kept in mind, that when those formations are on the right, the officers commanding the sections are to be on the right; and that is then to be the governing flank. When formed to the left by this kind of movement, the left flank governs. It will be necessary that a position square to the front should be maintained, and no inclination to the right or left, unless it be required in order to keep the pro-

Digitized by Google

portion of the left flank of the preceding section in line with the right, so that he will neither take up too much nor too little ground, nor in any way derange the other sections.

NOTE.—The direct echelon may be commenced from either section or sub-division in the company; taking care at all times, to feel and dress towards the section in front.

MANŒUVRE No. 6.

ECHELON CHANGE OF POSITION TO A POINT DISTANT, AND NOT WITHIN THE COMPANY.

Company will march in echelon to form a line to the right.

By sections—To the right half wheel—March.
Echelon forward—March.
Mark time.
To the left—Wheel into line—March.
Halt. See Plate IV.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

This march in echelon is difficult, and requires particular attention. The front of each division must be retained, and the same relative situation preserved. When the left flank of each section have arrived on the new line, the commanding officer orders—*mark time.* And each commandant of sections will immediately see that they have not changed position.

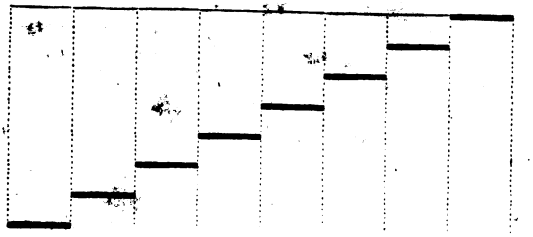
At the word—*wheel into line*, the left hand man of each section will half face to the left, and the remainder of the section wheel up and dress by the right.

The march in echelon to the left flank, is execut-

Digitized by Google

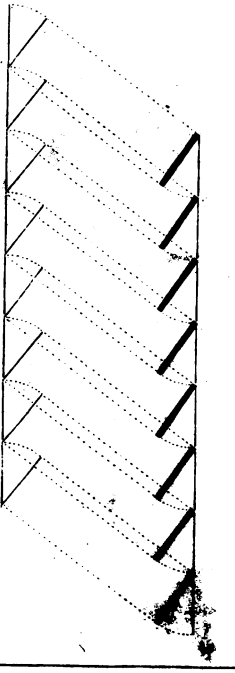
PLATE IV.

Manoeuvre No. 5.



Front

Manoeuvre No. 6.



Front

I. Ransford Sc.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

ed in the same manner. It may be also done to the rear, and to either flank, by facing about, and by wheeling up in echelon to the flank required.

NOTE.—It may be remarked, that any wheel short of a full wheel from line to column, would produce an echelon.

MANŒUVRE No. 7.

THE RIGHT OF THE COMPANY BROUGHT FORWARD BY ECHELON, AND FORMED ON THE LEFT, SO AS TO MAKE A HALF WHEEL.

Company will wheel into echelon, to form a line on the left section.

By sections—To the left quarter wheel—March.
Form a line on the left section—March—Halt.
See Plate V.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

In this movement it has been practised to half wheel to the left, so that each section may stand parallel with the new line. But I have found it very difficult to perform it in this way; as the sections must continually oblique to the right to prevent the eighth section coming on to the ground of the sixth.

By making a quarter wheel, each section forms a right angle with the line of march, which enables each section to march direct to the front, until the left hand file comes on the new alignment. When the section-officer gives the word—*wheel into line;* and see that each man marks time, till the officer commanding, gives the word—*halt.*

There are various other movements practised by echelon; such as wheeling on the centre, bringing forward the left, and forming on the right; throwing

Digitized by Google

back the right and forming on the left; and throwing back the left and forming on the right, and various others equally useful; but these examples are deemed sufficient to enable the commandant of a company, to effect any change that may be required of him by the echelon movement.

MANŒUVRE No. 8.

THE COMPANY ARE FILED INTO COLUMN TO THE FRONT, WITH RIGHT IN FRONT.

Company will file from the left of sections, into open column to the front.

To the left face.
File to the front.
March—Halt.
Front face. See Plate V.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

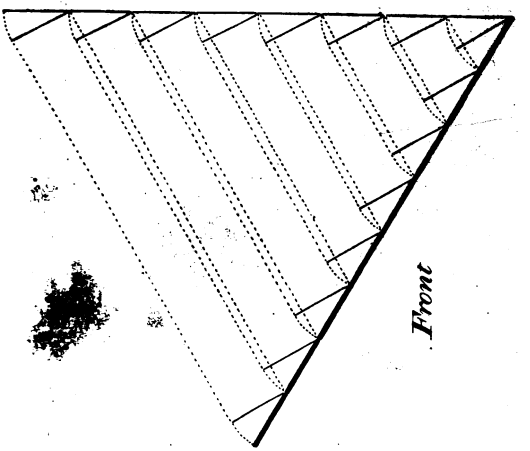
When the word is given—*left face*, all face to the left, but the man on the left, who will remain facing to the front, ready to lead the section when the word is given—*march.* Each leading file must look to the right, and see that they are in a line with each other; the remaining files will turn to the right, when they arrive on the ground where the leading file stood. The whole move together at the word—*march*, and continue to advance in close order, till the commanding officer gives the word—*halt.*

When halted, the officers will see that the files are closed to the pivot, ready to wheel into line, or march in open column, as may be required. If the march has been correct, they will have retained the exact wheeling distance, and the lock step will have prevented opening the files. The column will now stand right in front, having faced to the right at the word—*front.*

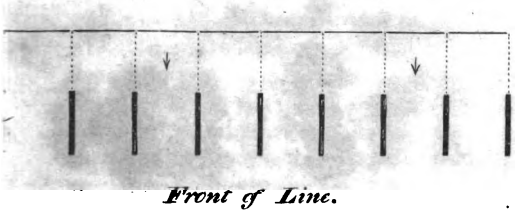
Digitized by Google

PLATE V.

Manoeuvre No. 7.



Manoeuvre No. 8.



Front of Line.

Sanford Sc.

Digitized by Google

PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

Digitized by Google

MANŒUVRE No. 9.

SUCCESSIVE FORMATION OF LINE, FROM OPEN COLUMN, WHILE ON THE MARCH, TO THE RIGHT FLANK.

Column will form a line on the front section.

Front section—To the right wheel.
Halt.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

When the intention is announced by the commanding officer, of forming to the right flank, by wheeling sections in succession on a line previously designated, the right of each section becomes the governing flank, to which the officers and men are to conform.

When the word is given for the first section to *wheel*—they will wheel to the right, and step one pace in front, to give the remaining sections room to pass in rear and wheel up as soon as they are uncovered, and mark time till they have the word—*halt.*

MANŒUVRE No. 10.

TO FORM THE WEDGE FROM OPEN COLUMN OF SECTIONS.

Company form the wedge—March.

EXPLANATORY REMARKS

Plate of movements for light-infantry, No. 10, Fig. 1, represents a company in open column of sections, right in front, containing fifty-five distinct files. Fig. 2, represents the files broken off in each section, which are separated by small lines; and the files or parts of sections which form together, are connected by other small lines running across the lines which separate the sections. Fig. 3, represents the wedge formed in close order.

Digitized by Google

Forming the wedge, consists simply in decreasing the front, and increasing the rear, so as to increase each line one file from front to rear; should there be odd files, there may be an equal number in two or three of the last ranks.

Where a company consists of fifty-five files, as in this plate, the third file from the right in the first section forms the point; the two right hand files the second line; the three files on the left of the file that forms the front, forms the third line; the first file on the left of the first section, and the three files on the right of the second section, form the fourth line; the four remaining files in the second section, and the first file on the right of the third section, form the fifth line; the remainder of the section form the sixth line; the fourth section form the seventh line; the fifth section, and the first file on the right of the sixth section, form the eighth line; the six remaining files of the sixth section, and the three right hand files of the seventh section, form the ninth line; and the four remaining files and the rear section, form the tenth and rear line.

This may be formed from any number of files on the principle before mentioned, and may be very useful to break through a line of infantry, or resist an attack; but must always be formed in close order, and each file cover the intervals of the file in front.

The sections may be formed by breaking off of files, and forming as before, and mark time till each section have gained their proper distance in the column.

OBSERVATIONS RESPECTING THE CHANGE OF FRONT, AND FORMIMG SUB-DIVISIONS FROM SECTIONS.

It has been already remarked that when the company change front by wheeling to the right-about on

Digitized by Google

PLATE IT.

Manoeuvre No. 9.

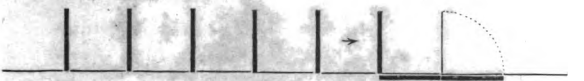


Fig. 1.

Manoeuvre No. 10.

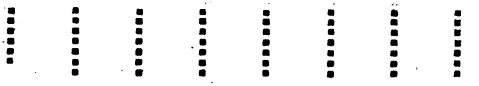


Fig. 1.

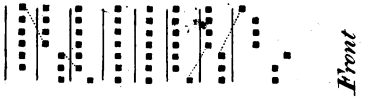


Fig. 2.

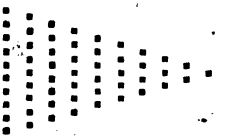


Fig. 3.

T. Sanford Sc.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

the centre, the officers do not wheel, but face to the right and left about, which reverses their order; and the commandant of the section or sub-division, still retains the commanding flank. This position of officers answers in the room of markers, which most officers post on the right and left flank of sub-divisions, to retain the exact position of the column, which is very necessary.

When the company are in column of sections, right in front, and it be ordered to form sub-divisions, the first section will oblique to the right sufficient to give room for the second section to oblique half their length to the left, and form on his left in a line with the first section. The other sections will do the same, taking care that the front section of each sub-division oblique to the right, and the rear to the left. The first and fourth sergeants leave their sections, and oblique to the left; the other sergeants keep their places; the corporals fall in rear and take post on the right of the sub-divisions.

THIRD DIVISION.

POSITION AND DUTY OF THE LIGHT-INFANTRY AND RIFLE COMPANIES ON BATTALION DAYS, WHEN PARADED WITH THE BATTALION COMPANIES.

In some of the battalions of infantry, there is one, sometimes two, and sometimes three, and in one instance five rifle companies attached to the same battalion, which will in no small degree embarrass the regular movements of the line; and which would require peculiar skill in arranging so as to manœuvre with propriety; and in the performance of which I have nothing whereby to be governed, but my own judgment and experience, never having seen a system that made provision for such an unequal num-

Digitized by Google

ber of companies, and so many different kinds of troops in one battalion. It must therefore be left with the officers to decide, whether a better disposition of the light-infantry and rifle companies in connection may not be made.

It will be seen in the foregoing work, that I have uniformly posted the light-infantry companies on the right and left of the battalion in one rank, for which I have likewise given my reasons; but it is obvious that a different disposition must be made when rifle companies are attached to the same battalion. Many of the battalions in this State have no rifle companies within their limits; such will be governed by the rules already prescribed; but where battalions have one or more companies of riflemen attached to them, I would recommend the following arrangement of the several light-infantry and rifle companies.

POSITION OF THE COMPANIES IN LINE.

When there is one rifle company, they will be posted on the left of the battalion in one rank, and the two light-infantry companies on the right in two ranks constituting a grand division of light-infantry. When there are two rifle companies, they will be paraded on the left, and in two ranks, constituting also a grand division of riflemen.

The law directs that the rifle companies at all times be posted on the extreme left of the battalion, but when there are three rifle companies, I would suggest the propriety of the one highest in rank being posted on the right of the whole, in one rank, and perform the evolutions independent of the other companies. This I think to be preferable to their being arranged with the other companies, as there is now an equal number of companies in each wing.

Digitized by Google

and an even number of grand divisions. But if this be objected to, the younger of the three may be posted on the left in one rank, and perform the duty of a flank guard, but where there are five rifle companies they should be paraded on the left as a battalion, and one of the companies do the duty of light-infantry.

DUTY OF THE LIGHT-INFANTRY COMPANIES WHEN PARADED WITH THE BATTALION.

When the light-infantry are paraded in two ranks, the evolutions of the line will be performed on them, and by them, the same as though they were battalion companies; and they will receive the word of command from the field officers, which order will be immediately repeated by the captains. But when paraded in one rank, and performing the peculiar duties of light-infantry, they will perform all the movements of the battalion, and receive the command from the field-officer, as far as consistent; but when their movement requires a different word of command, it will be dictated by the captain, and the movement so directed in all cases as not to impede the evolutions of the battalion.

DUTY OF THE RIFLE COMPANIES.

When the rifle companies constitute a battalion, they will manœuvre the same as the other battalions, under the direction of the senior captain, who is to take the words from the colonel.

MODE OF PERFORMING THE MANUAL AND PLATOON EXERCISE.

The light-infantry will at all times perform the manual and platoon exercise with the battalion, and take the word of command from the field-officer, unless the colonel direct them to be exercised by themselves. The rifle companies will also exercise at

Digitized by Google

the same time, but receive the command from the senior captain, when there are more than one to perform together, unless otherwise directed by the colonel.

DUTY OF THE MUSICIANS.

When the musicians of the battalion are ordered to the right of parade, all the musicians of the light-infantry and rifle companies will also be assembled with those of the battalion companies, with whom they will remain through the day. When the battalion consists of twelve or more companies, the musicians should be posted in the centre, (if there be not a band,) where they may better be heard in the movements.

OF THE MANAGEMENT OF FIELD PIECES.

As field-pieces are frequently used in the infantry regiments, and as it may at times be necessary that the infantry should manage them, it was thought of sufficient consequence to add a few pages on the subject of limbering and unlimbering them.

TO MARCH ON THE FLANKS OF THE PIECES, UNLIMBER AND MAN THEM.

The company being on the march in column, with the right in front, and pieces limbered; and having arrived on the ground on which they are to exercise; the officer commands,

Platoons—from the centre—To the right and left turn —Countermarch.

(See Plate VII. Fig. 1.)

The men in each platoon face; those of the right wing of the platoon face to the right, excepting the right hand man, he marches directly forward; the

Digitized by Google

PLATE VII.

Fig. 1.

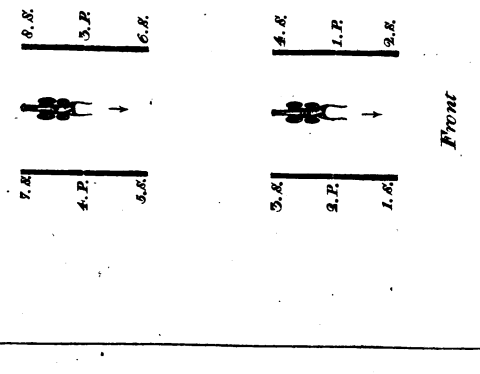
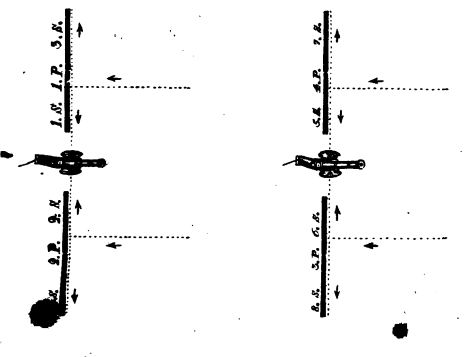
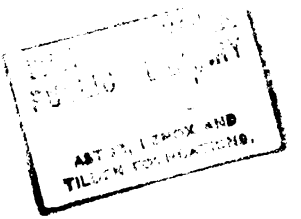


Fig. 2.



Sanford Re.

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

others in succession as they arrive on his ground turn to the left, and march forward to the right flank of the piece; and those on the left flank of the platoon face to the left, excepting the left hand man, who marches directly forward on the left flank of the piece; the others, as they arrive on his ground, turn to the right, and march forward.

By this movement it is seen, that the second and fourth sections, or the left sections of the first and second sub-divisions, form the first platoon, on the left flank of the first piece; the first and third sections, or the right sections of the first and second sub-divisions, form the second platoon, on the right flank of the first piece; and the other sub-divisions form in the same manner, by the left sections forming on the left flank, and the right section forming on the right flank of the piece. The rear files advanced in a line with the muzzle of the piece.

Platoons—To the right and left turn to the centre—Unlimber pieces.

The platoons on the right flank of the piece turn to the left, and those on the left of the piece turn to the right, and march to the piece, which they unlimber, and man it out either for exercise or action. (See Plate VII. Fig. 2.)

One other mode of performing it is this, the company being on the march, right in front, and pieces limbered, the officer orders,

Halt—Unlimber pieces—Man pieces.

When the word is given to unlimber pieces, each man attends to the duty assigned him; and at the word—*man pieces*, the corporals from each sub-division, step to the pieces and take the drag-ropes from the breast transom-hooks, and hook to the washer-hooks, and extend them in a line with the

Digitized by Google

axletrees, and lay them on the ground to dress by. All the men that are not taken up in the management of the piece, will form into line in the following manner.

The first sub-division, being in front of the piece, will face to the left and march out the length of the sub-division; then turn by files to the left and march till they arrive at the drag-ropes; then turn again to the left, and march till they arrive at the piece, then halt and front without the word, and dress by the drag ropes or the axletrees. The sub-division in rear of the piece faces to the right, and marches out wheeling distance as the other; then turn by files to the left, and pass to the rear of the drag-ropes; then turn again to the left and follow the drag-ropes to the piece; then halt and front to the muzzle of the piece as the first sub-division. The third and fourth sub-divisions belonging to the second piece, will do the same. The horses and limbers are turned out to the right flank of the pieces, and clear of the wings.

The pieces are then in column ready to march, with the left in front, or to form battery to any given point. (See Plate VIII. Fig. 1.)

TO MAN PIECES FROM COLUMN AND CONTINUE THE MARCH TO THE FRONT.

The company being on the march in column, with the right in front, receives the word—

Halt—Unlimber pieces.

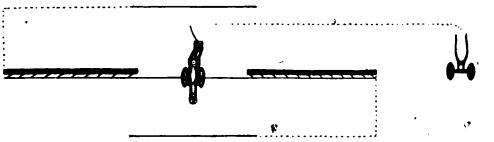
Man pieces.

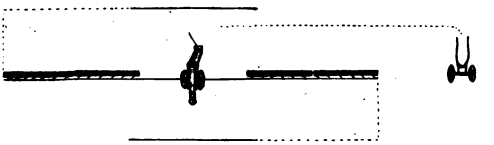
At the word to *unlimber pieces*, those detached for that purpose, will immediately leave the sub-division to which they belong, and unlimber the pieces, and wheel them about, and prepare them for action or exercise, the limbers will turn out to the left flank

Digitized by Google

PLATE VIII.

Fig. 1.





Front

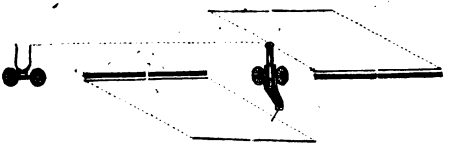
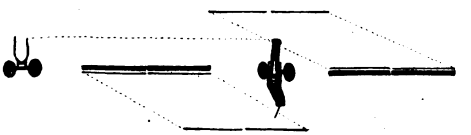


Fig. 2.



T. Sanford Sc.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

Digitized by Google

of the pieces. While this is performing, the sub-divisions in front of the pieces will face to the right-about, and march obliquely to the left, until in line with the axletree on the right flank of the pieces; then halt and face again to the front. The sub-divisions in rear of the pieces will likewise oblique to the left without facing, and march up and dress by the axletree on the left flank of the piece. The word is then given *man pieces*, when each one will attend to the particular duty assigned him. (See Plate VIII. Fig. 2.)

To unlimber and man pieces from line, is simply for the gunners and bombardiers to take their several stations, and the remainder to close up towards the pieces.

Words of command for the manual exercise of field pieces.

The pieces are considered to be unlimbered, and formed in battery.

Attention.
Secure side boxes.
Man pieces.
To the right dress.
Advance spunge.
Tend vent.
Spunge pieces.
Handle cartridge.
Charge pieces.
Ram down cartridge.
Prime—Take aim.
Fire.
Change drag-ropes.
Unhook drag-ropes.
Mount side boxes.
Limber pieces—Shoulder rammer.
Carry lint stock.

Digitized by Google

MILITIA TACTICS.

PART VI.

OF CAMP DUTY.

REMARKS.

THE following instructions for the regulation of a camp, are confined principally to a battalion; but the duty of guards is the same as in a brigade or division; but officers of different grades must be assigned for the command of the different departments, according to the different duty assigned them.

As Congress, in the War Regulations, have not established any discipline for the government of a camp, I have been governed in this, partly by my own experience, and partly by the most celebrated authors of Europe, and also by the system by which the militia of the United States have been governed since the Revolution; conforming, however, as far as practicable, to the present mode practised in the Army.

METHOD OF LAYING OUT A CAMP, WITH THE ORDER OF ENCAMPMENT.

When the battalion arrives on the ground where the troops are to encamp, the quarter-master having previously fixed his line of encampment, they will be conducted along the line; and the quarter-master will mark out the place for each company and tent, and for the kitchens, &c. as described in the following order.

Digitized by Google

ORDER OF ENCAMPMENT.

The infantry will at all times encamp by companies, as they are formed in order of battle.

The front of the camp will occupy the same extent of ground as the troops when formed; and the intervals between the wings will be ten paces.

The quarter-master must be answerable that he require no more ground than is necessary for the number of men he actually has with the battalion, allowing two feet for each file, exclusive of the officers, and adding sixteen feet for the intervals between the platoons. He is also to be answerable that no more tents are pitched than are absolutely necessary, allowing one tent for the non-commissioned officers of each company, and one for every six men, including the musicians.

The tents of the non-commissioned officers and privates are to be pitched in two ranks, with an interval of six paces between the ranks, and two feet between each tent; the tents of the non-commissioned officers to be in the front rank, on the right of their companies, in the right wing, and on the left, in the left wing of the battalion. Nine feet front are to be allowed for each tent with its interval, and twenty feet in the centre of the battalion for the adjutant.

The captains' and subalterns' tents are to be in one line, twenty feet from the rear of the men's tents; the captains' in the right wing, opposite the right of their respective companies, and the subalterns' opposite the left; and the contrary in the left wing.

The field officers' tents are to be in one line, twenty feet from the line of officers; the colonel's opposite the centre; the lieutenant-colonel's on the right, and the major's on the left, in rear of the centre of the two wings.

Digitized by Google

The surgeon, pay-master, and quarter-master, encamp in one line, with the front of their tents in a line with the rear of the field officers' tents; the surgeon on the right, pay-master on the left, and quarter-master in the centre.

The kitchens are to be dug behind their respective companies, forty feet from the field officers' tents. The sutlers' tents are to be between the kitchens.

The drums, in pleasant weather, are to be piled six paces in front of the adjutant's tent, and the colours planted before them.

The sinks of the first line are to be three hundred feet in front, and those of the second line the same distance in rear of the camp.

The commanding officer of the battalion is to be answerable that no tents are pitched out of the line of encampment on any account whatever, except for the battalion hospital.

MANNER OF ENTERING A CAMP.

The head of the column arriving at the entrance of the camp, the colonel will command—

Column—Carry—Arms. Music—Common time—March.

On hearing which, the men come to a shoulder, and the music play common time; and the officers will see that their platoons have their proper wheeling distance, ranks closed, and files dressed.

The colonel will take care to march the battalion in a direct line along the front of the camp, and at such a distance that the flanks shall not interfere with the line marked out for the tents.

As soon as the battalion arrive in front of their ground, they halt, and wheel into line, and order arms. The adjutant will immediately order out the

Digitized by Google

piquet guard that may have been detached from them in front of the centre of the battalion, and send them to the rendezvous appointed.

The piquets being sent off, the commanding officer of the battalion orders the men to stack their arms, and dismisses them to pitch their tents.

As soon as the companies have pitched their tents, the captains will order their companies paraded, and they fetch in their arms.

The tents of the battalion being all pitched, the adjutant will form the detachment for necessaries, and send them off.

In the mean time, the colonel, having examined the ground, will, if necessary, order out a party to open the communications on the right and left, and in front of the troops, and in rear of the baggage.

NECESSARY REGULATIONS FOR PRESERVING ORDER AND CLEANLINESS IN THE CAMP.

When a battalion enters a camp, the fieldo fficers must see that the encampment is pitched regularly; that the sinks and kitchens are immediately dug in their proper places, and that no tents are pitched in any part of the camp contrary to the order prescribed.

One officer at least from each company will remain on parade, to see that the tents are pitched regularly, on the ground marked out.

The tents should be marked with the number of the battalion and company, to prevent their being lost or exchanged, and the tents of each company numbered; and each non-commissioned officer should have a list of the tents, with the men's names belonging to each.

Whenever a battalion is to remain more than one night on the same ground, the soldiers must cut a

Digitized by Google

small trench round their tents to carry off the rain; but great care must be taken that they do not throw the dirt against the tents.

One officer of a company must every day visit the tents, and see that every thing is kept clean; and that every utensil belonging to them is in proper order; and that no bones or other filth be left in or near them; and when the weather is pleasant, should order them to be struck about two hours at noon, and the straw and bedding well aired.

The soldiers should not be permitted to eat in their tents excepting in bad weather; and an officer of a camp must often visit the messes, and see that the provisions are good and well cooked; and that the men of one tent mess together; and that the provision is not sold, or disposed of for liquor.

A subaltern, four non-commissioned officers and a drummer, must every day be appointed for the police of the battalion, who are on no account to be absent during the time they are to be on duty.

The officer of the police is to make a general inspection into the cleanliness of the camp, and not suffer fire to be made any where but in the kitchens, and cause all dirt to be immediately removed, and either burnt or buried. He is to be present at all distributions in the battalion, and to form and send off all detachments for necessaries.

In case the adjutant is obliged to be absent, the officer of the police is to do his duty till his return; and for that purpose he must attend at the adjutant's tent, to be ready to receive and distribute any orders that may come from the battalion.

The drummer of the police must attend constantly at the adjutant's tent, to be ready at all times to communicate the necessary signals; nor must he be absent himself on any account, during the twenty-four hours, without leaving another drummer to sup-

Digitized by Google

ply his place till his return, nor then, without leave from the adjutant.

When any of the men want water, they must apply to the officer of the police, who will order the drum to beat the necessary signal; on which all who want water must immediately parade with their canteens before the colours, where the officer of the police will form and send them off under the care of two non-commissioned officers of the police, who are to be answerable that they bring back the whole detachment, and that no excesses are committed whilst they are out. Wood and all other necessaries must be fetched in the same manner. Except in case of necessity, not more than one detachment is to be out at a time.

No non-commissioned officer or soldier shall be permitted to pass the chain of sentinels round the camp, without permission in writing from one of the field officers of the battalion; which permission shall be dated the same day, and shall, on the return of the person to whom it was granted, be delivered to the adjutant, who is to return it to the colonel, with his report.

Every detachment not conducted by a commissioned officer, shall have a written permission from a field officer, or the officer of the police, if it be a detachment going for necessaries; without which they are not permitted to pass the chain.

All officers whatever are to make it a point of duty to stop every non-commissioned officer or soldier they meet without the camp, and examine his pass; and if he has not a satisfactory one, or having one, is committing any excess, the officer must conduct him back to the nearest guard, from whence he must be sent, with his crime, to his company.

The sentinel before the colours must have orders, in case he hears any alarm in camp, or at the ad-

Digitized by Google

vanced posts, to acquaint the adjutant with it; who will inform the commanding officer of the battalion, or order an alarm beat, if the case requires it.

OF ROLL-CALL.

The roll is to be called in each battalion at *Troop* and *Retreat* beating, at which time the men are to parade with their arms, and at the beating of the *Reveille*, and at noon, the commanding officers of companies will cause the rolls of their respective companies to be called, the men parading for that purpose without arms, and to be detained no longer than is necessary to call the roll.

The non-commissioned officers are to visit their respective squads a quarter of an hour after *Tattoo* beating, and see that all are present and retire to rest; and make their report to the commanding officer of the company.

No non-commissioned officer or soldier is to be absent from roll call without permission from his commanding officer.

No commissioned officer is to be absent from roll-call without permission from the commanding officer of the battalion.

OF THE INSPECTION OF THE MEN, THEIR DRESS, NECESSARIES, ARMS, EQUIPAGE, AND AMMUNITION.

The oftener the men are under the inspection of their officers the better; for which reason, every morning, at troop beating, they must inspect into the dress of their men; see that their clothes are whole and put on properly; their hands and faces washed, their hair combed, and their equipments properly fixed, and every article about them in the greatest order. Those who are guilty of repeated neglects of this kind are to be confined and punished. The field officers must pay attention to this object, taking

Digitized by Google

proper notice of those companies where a visible neglect appears, and publicly applauding those who are remarkable for their good appearance.

The commanding officers of companies must every day examine their men's arms and ammunition, and see that they are all clean and in good order.

Every Saturday morning, the captains are to make a general inspection of their companies, and examine into the state of the men's clothing and other necessaries, observing that they agree in quantity with what is specified in the company book, and that every article is the man's who produces it. For which purpose, and to discover theft, every man's things should be marked; if any thing is deficient, strict inquiry must be made into the cause, and should it appear to be lost, pledged, sold, or exchanged, the offender must be severely punished.

That the men may not be improperly burdened and fatigued, the captains are not to suffer them to carry any thing which is either useless or unnecessary.

OF THE DIFFERENT BEATS OF THE DRUM.

When a number of regiments are encamped together, the different daily beats of the drum will begin on the right, and be instantly followed by the whole line; to facilitate which, the drummer's call shall be beat by the drums of the police, a quarter of an hour before the time of beating, when the drummers will assemble before the colours of their respective battalions; as soon as the beat begins on the right, it is to be immediately taken up by the whole line, the drummers beating along the front of their respective battalions, from the centre to the right, from thence to the left, and back again to the centre, where they finish.

The different beats and signals of the drum are to be as follows:

Digitized by Google

The General is to be beat only when the whole are to march, and is the signal to strike the tents, and prepare for the march.

The Assembly is the signal to repair to the colours.

The March for the whole to move.

The Reveille is beat at day-break, and is the signal for the soldiers to rise, and sentries to leave off challenging.

The Troop assembles the soldiers together for the purpose of calling the roll, and inspecting the men for duty.

The Retreat is beat at sunset, for calling the roll, warning the men for duty, and reading the orders of the day.

The Tattoo is for the soldiers to repair to their tents, where they must remain till *Reveille* beating next morning.

To Arms, is the signal for getting under arms in case of an alarm.

The Parley is to desire a conference with the enemy.

THE SIGNALS.

Adjutant's call—*First part of the troop.*

First sergeant's call—*One roll and three flams.*

All non-commissioned officers' call—*Two rolls and five flams.*

To go for wood—*Poin stroke and ten stroke roll.*

Water—*Two strokes and a flam.*

Provisions—*Roast beef.*

Front to halt—*Two flams from right to left, and a full drag with the right, a left hand flam and a right hand full drag.*

For the front to advance quicker—*The long march.*

To march slower—*The taps.*

For the drummers—*The drummer's call.*

Digitized by Google

For a fatigue party—*The pioneer's march.*
For the church call—*The parley.*

The drummers will practice a hundred paces in front of the battalion, at the hours fixed by the adjutant-general, or by the colonel, in case of there being but one battalion in camp; and any drummers found beating at any other time, except ordered, must be punished.

OF THE SERVICE OF GUARDS.

THE DIFFERENT GUARDS AND THEIR USE.

The different guards of an *army*, will consist of,
1st. Out-posts and piquet guards.
2d. Camp and quarter guards.
3d. General and staff officers' guards.

The piquet guards of an army, are formed by detachments from the line, and are posted at the avenues of the camp, in such numbers as the general commanding thinks necessary for the security of the camp.

The camp and quarter guards are for the better security of the camp, as well as preserving good order and discipline.

When a battalion is in camp, they will furnish a camp and quarter guard, to consist of

Subalt.	Sergt.	Corp.	Drum.	Priv.
1	1	1	1	36

who are to be posted nine at a time, in such a manner as to form a chain of sentinels round the camp. The intention of the camp guard being to prevent improper persons entering, or the soldiers going out of camp; the commanding officer will add to, or diminish them, as he finds necessary.

The guards of the general, and other officers, when in camp, will be as follows:

Digitized by Google

	Subalt.	Serg.	Corp.	Priv.
A major-general will have	1	1	1	20
A brigadier-general		1	1	12
Quarter-master-general		1	1	12
Adjutant-general		1	1	12
Commissary general			1	6
Pay-master-general			1	6

The different guards are to mount for two hours, to be regulated by the commanding officer.

The camp guard are to parade before the centre of the battalion, where they will be formed by the adjutant, who furnishes the officer, and immediately sends them off to their respective posts.

All guards, except those which are honorary, should ordinarily be of force proportioned to the number of sentinels required, allowing three reliefs for each post.

OF RELIEVING GUARDS AND SENTINELS.

The guards in camp should be relieved every twenty-four hours. The guards without the camp, will ordinarily be relieved in the same manner; but this must depend on their distance from camp, and other circumstances, which may sometimes require their continuing on duty for several days. In this case, they must be previously notified to provide themselves accordingly.

The guards are to leave camp, and arrive at their posts in the greatest order, marching by platoons or sections, when the roads will permit.

When the new guard approaches the post, they *carry arms;* and the officer of the old guard, having his old guard paraded, on the approach of the new guard, commands—

Present—Arms.

Digitized by Google

The new guard marches past the old, and takes post three or four paces on its right, both guards front towards the enemy; and the officer' commands—

Present—Arms.

And both guards come to the *present.*

The two officers then approach each other, and the relieving officer takes his orders from the relieved. Both officers then return to their guards, and command—

Shoulder—Arms.

Non-commissioned officers—*Forward—March.*

The non-commissioned officers of both guards, who are to relieve the sentinels, advance in front of the new guard.

The sergeant of the new guard then tells off as many sentinels as are necessary, and the corporal of the new guard, conducted by a corporal of the old guard, relieves the sentinels, beginning at the guard-house.

When the sentinel sees the relief approach, he *presents* his arms, and the corporal, halting his relief at six paces distant, commands—

Present—Arms. Recover—Arms.

This last motion is only for the sentinel relieved, and the one to be relieved; and the former immediately approaches with the corporal, and having received his orders from the old sentry, takes his place; and the sentry relieved marches into the ranks, and takes his place on the left. The corporal then orders—

Support—Arms. Forward—March.

The relief proceeds in the same manner till the

Digitized by Google

whole are relieved. If the sentries are numerous, the sergeants are to be employed as well as the corporals in relieving them.

When the corporal returns with the old sentinels, he leads them before the old guard, and dismisses them to their ranks.

The officer of the old guard then forms his guard in the same manner as when first detached, and marches them in order to camp.

As soon as he arrives in camp, he halts, forms his men of the different companies together, and sends them to their respective companies, conducted by a non-commissioned officer, or careful soldier.

When the old guard march off, the new guard present their arms, till they are gone, then shoulder, and take the place of the old guard.

The officer then orders a non-commissioned officer to take down the names of the guard, and the number of each post, and the hours each one is to go on, in the following manner—

Hours they go on,	10—4,	10—4,	12—6,	12—6,	2—8,	2—8.
Post No. 1.	*Men's Names.*		*Men's Names.*		*Men's Names.*	

Suppose the guard to consist of twenty-four men, and to furnish eight sentinels, they are divided into three reliefs; and the posts being numbered, beginning always with the guard-house, each man's name is put down against the number of the post he will always stand sentry at during his term; by which means an officer knows what particular man was at any post during any hour of the day or night.

The relief of sentries is always to be marched in

Digitized by Google

the greatest order, and with supported arms, the corporal often looking back to observe the conduct of the men; and if an officer approaches, he is to order, *carry arms*, supporting them again when the officer has past.

The corporals are to be answerable that the sentries, when relieving, perform their motions with the greatest spirit and exactness.

A corporal who is detected in having the insolence to suffer sentries to relieve each other, without his being present, should, as well as the sentry so relieved, be severely punished.

INSTRUCTIONS TO OFFICERS ON GUARD.

On the vigilance of the officer depends not only the safety of his guard, but that of the whole army.

As it is highly necessary an officer should have some knowledge of his situation, he must, immediately after relieving the old guard, visit the sentinels, and examine the ground round his post; and if he thinks the sentries not sufficient to secure him from a surprise, he is at liberty to place more, acquainting therewith the general or field officer of the day who visits his post; but without their leave he is not to alter any that are already posted. He must cause the roads leading to the enemy, and to the next posts, to be well reconnoitred by an officer of the guard, or for want of one, by an intelligent non-commissioned officer and some faithful men, to inform himself of every thing necessary for his security, and use every possible precaution against a surprise. He must permit no stranger to enter his post, nor suffer his men to talk with him. If a suspicious person, or a deserter from the enemy, approaches, he must stop him and send him to head quarters, or to a superior officer. He must on no account suffer

Digitized by Google

the soldiers to pull off their accoutrements, or straggle more than twenty paces from the guard; and if water or any other necessaries are wanted for the guard, they must be sent for by a non-commissioned officer and some men, with their arms if at an outpost, on no account suffering a soldier to go by himself; but never whilst the sentinels are relieving. He must examine every relief before it is sent off; see that their arms are loaded and in order, and that the men are acquainted with their duty; and if by any accident a man should get the least disguised with liquor, he must on no account, be suffered to go on sentry.

At every relief, the guard must parade, and the roll be called; and during the night, and when near the enemy, during the day, the guard must remain under arms till the relief returns.

During the day, the men may be permitted to rest themselves as much as is consistent with the safety of the guard; but in the night, no man must be suffered to lie down or sleep on any account, but have his arms constantly in his hands, and be ready to fall in on the least alarm.

Between every relief, the sentries must be visited by a non-commissioned officer and a file of men; and, when more than one officer is on guard, as often as possible by an officer. A patrol also must be frequently sent on the roads leading to the enemy.

During the day, the sentinels on the out-posts must stop every party of men, whether armed or not, till they have been examined by the officer of the guard.

As soon as it is dark, the countersign must be given to the sentinels of the piquets and advanced posts, after which they are to challenge all that approach them; and if any person, after being order-

Digitized by Google

ed to stand, should continue to approach, or attempt to escape, the sentry, after challenging him three times, must fire on him.

The sentinels of the interior guards of the camp will receive the countersign, and begin to challenge, at such hours as shall be determined in orders, according to circumstances.

A sentinel, on perceiving any person to approach, must challenge briskly, and never suffer more than one to advance till he has the countersign given him; if the person challenged has not the countersign, the sentry must call the sergeant of the guard, and keep the person at a little distance from his post, till the sergeant comes to examine him.

Whenever a sentry on an out-post perceives more than three men approach, he must order them to stand, and immediately pass the word for the sergeant of the guard; the officer of the guard must immediately parade his guard, and send a sergeant with a party of men to examine the party; the non-commissioned officer must order the commanding officer of the party to advance, and conduct him to the officer of the guard; who, in case he is unacquainted with his person, and does not choose to trust either to his clothing or to his knowledge of the countersign, must demand his passport, and examine him strictly; and if convinced of his belonging to the army, must let him pass.

If a sentry, on challenging, is answered relief, patrol or round, he must in that case order the sergeant or corporal to advance with the countersign; and if he is then assured of their being the relief, &c. he may suffer them to advance.

A sentinel must take the greatest care not to be surprised; he must never suffer the person who advances to give the countersign, to approach with-

Digitized by Google

in the reach of his arms, and always charge his bayonet.

The officers who mount the camp guards, must give orders to their sentries not to suffer any person to pass in or out of camp, except by one of the guards, nor then till the officer of the guard has examined him.

In case one of the guard deserts, the officer must immediately change the countersign, and send notice thereof to the officer of the day; who is to communicate the same to the other guards, and the commanding officer.

As soon as the officer of a guard discovers the approach of the enemy, he must immediately send notice to the nearest general officer, call in the sentries, and put himself in the best posture of defence. If attacked on his post, he will defend it to the utmost of his power, nor retreat, unless compelled by superior force; and even then he must retire in the greatest order, keeping a fire on the enemy, whose superiority, however great, can never justify a guard's retiring in disorder. Should the enemy pursue a guard into camp, the officer must take care to retire through the intervals of the wings, and form in the rear of the line, and wait for further orders.

When an officer is posted at a bridge, defile, or any work, with orders to maintain it, he must defend it to the last extremity, however superior the force of the enemy may be, as it is to be supposed that the general who gave those orders will reinforce him, or order him to retire whenever he thinks proper.

POSITION OF SENTRIES, AND MODE OF CHALLENGING, &c.

The chain of sentries which covers the front of a camp may be posted either by double or single

Digitized by Google

files*. If by double files, the two men of one file may sit down, with their arms in their hands; while the men of the other file walk to the right and left until they meet the adjoining files, they then return to the other file, and after thus continuing for twenty or thirty minutes, they will be relieved by the other file. The sentries, in passing from one file to the other, must not stop, unless for the purpose of challenging, or otherwise to ascertain any thing suspicious which he may see or hear.

If the sentry challenges, the sitting file instantly rises up.

If the night be dark, or there be any reason to apprehend that the enemy may pass through the chain without discovery, then one file will stand looking out in front while the other file is passing to the right and left.

MODE OF CHALLENGING.

The moment the sentry sees any person, he orders *Halt, who comes there?* at the same time recovers his arms, fronting the party or person approaching. If it be a relief, the officer will answer, *Relief*, and the sentry will order, *One advance and give the countersign*, at the same time come to the charge. One of the party advances to the point of the bayonet, and gives the countersign in a low tone of voice. The sentry should not consider this sufficient to let the party advance, but still keeps the point of his bayonet directed to the person's breast, and asks him some common questions, such as he is certain ought to be known by the other; for instance;—what is the name of the officer, sergeant or corporal of the guard, or relief, &c.

* Two men are here understood to be a file, as the guard are supposed to be paraded in two ranks.

Digitized by Google

The sentry, after satisfying himself as to the business of the person or party whom he challenges, and permits them to pass, will give the word *Advance*, and at the same time recovers his arms, and continues to front in the direction they pursue until clear of his post. Suppose it to be the relief, he also continues at the recover; the party approaches and is halted by a non-commissioned officer a few paces in front of him; the new sentry advances with the non-commissioned officer; and the directions are given to the new guard in a low tone of voice; the old sentry then joins the relief which proceeds to the next post.

RECEIVING A PARTY AT THE PIQUET.

Whenever the party approaches the post of the piquet, the sentry calls out, *Halt, who comes there?* and recovers his piece, notwithstanding he may be certain that it is the relief which may have left there the moment before, and immediately follows the challenge by calling out, *Turn out the piquet.* He fixes his eyes upon the party challenged, who of course stand fast. The piquet guard immediately form, and the commander sends off a non-commissioned officer with one or two files to the sentry, who, when he is joined by the guard, calls out to the party, *One advance and give the countersign*, and with the same precaution as already described. The party is accompanied by the non-commissioned officer and the detached files, to the officer of the piquet, who will satisfy himself fully respecting their business before he dismisses his own men.

If two *reliefs*, *patrols*, or other *parties*, meet, the party which is first challenged sends forward one of his men to give the countersign, and the other sends

Digitized by Google

a non-commissioned officer, or one intelligent private, a few paces to meet him.

The men must be taught when challenging, to do it in a loud determined manner, by which they inspire themselves with confidence; but if the enemy are near, they should not challenge in too loud a voice.

Every soldier should have all parts of this duty particularly explained to him, before he is allowed to mount as sentry, and then he should be posted for a few days, if possible, with an experienced soldier. A non-commissioned officer, upon being promoted to that rank, should likewise for several times be posted as a supernumerary.

TREATMENT OF THE SICK.

There is nothing which gains an officer the love of soldiers more than his care of them under the distress of sickness; it is then he has the power of exerting his humanity in providing them every comfortable necessary, and making their situation as agreeable as possible.

Two or three tents should be set apart in every battalion for the reception of such sick as cannot be sent to the general hospital, or whose cases may not require it. And every company shall be constantly furnished with two sacks to be filled occasionally with straw, and serve as beds for the sick. These sacks to be provided in the same manner as clothing for the troops, and finally issued by the regimental clothier to the captain of each company, who shall be answerable for the same.

When a soldier dies, or is dismissed from the hospital, the straw he lay on is to be burnt, and the bedding well washed and aired before another is permitted to use it.

Digitized by Google

The sergeants and corporals shall every morning, at roll-call, give a return of the sick of their respective squads to the first sergeant, who must make out one for the company, and lose no time in delivering it to the surgeon, who will immediately visit them, and order such as he thinks proper to the battalion hospital; such whose cases require their being sent to the general hospital, he is to report immediately to the surgeon general, or principal surgeon attending the army.

Once every week, (and oftener when required,) the surgeon will deliver the commanding officer of the battalion a return of the sick of the battalion, with their disorders, distinguishing those in the battalion hospital from those out of it.

When a soldier is sent to the hospital, the non-commissioned officer of his squad shall deliver up his arms and accoutrements to the commanding officer of the company, that they may be deposited in the battalion arm chest.

When a soldier has been sick, he must not be put on duty till he has recovered sufficient strength, of which the surgeon should be judge.

The surgeons are to remain with their battalions as well on a march as in camp, that in case of sudden accidents they may be at hand to apply the proper remedies.

HONOURS DUE FROM GUARDS TO GENERAL OFFICERS AND OTHERS.

To the commander in chief: All guards turn out with presented arms; the drums beat a march, and the officers salute.

To major-generals: They turn out with presented arms, and beat two ruffles.

To brigadier-generals: They turn out with presented arms, and beat one ruffle.

Digitized by Google

To officers of the day: They turn out with presented arms, and beat according to their rank.

Except from these rules a general officer's guard, which turns out and pays honours only to officers of superior rank to the general whose guard it is.

To colonels: Their own quarter guards turn out once a day with presented arms; after which, they only turn out with ordered arms.

To lieutenant colonels: Their own quarter guards turn out once a day with shouldered arms; after which, they only turn out and stand by their arms.

To majors: Their own quarter guards turn out once a day with ordered arms; at all other times they stand by their arms.

When a lieutenant colonel or major commands a battalion, the quarter guard is to pay him the same honours as are ordered to a colonel.

All sentries present their arms to general officers, and to the field officers of their own battalions; to all other commissioned officers they stand with shouldered arms.

When a detachment with arms passes before a guard, the guard shall be under arms, and the drums of both beat a march.

When a detachment without arms passes, the guard shall turn out and stand by their arms.

After dark, no honours are to be paid, except to the grand rounds; and when near the enemy, no honours are to be paid with the drum.

COMPLIMENTS TO BE PAID BY THE TROOPS.

FROM THE ESTABLISHED REGULATIONS OF THE WAR DEPARTMENT.

"The highest military honours are payable to the President and Vice-President of the United States, whether in uniform or not.

"To the secretary of war, to major-generals com-

Digitized by Google

manding separate divisions, or corps of the army, [namely; who are generals in Chief, under the direct instruction of the executive,] and to Governors of States when in uniform, the same honours will be paid, with this exception, that to them the standards of the cavalry will not be dropped in saluting."

[The corps of the militia, to all of whom these regulations apply when in service, will of course pay to the Governor of their own State, the same honours as are payable by the United States' troops to the President, whether in uniform or not.]

"All other major-generals are entitled to three ruffles of the drum, with presented arms, and to the dropping of all colours other than the standards. [To wit:—the regimental colours, which are generally of devices and various colours appropriate to their several corps, are to be dropped; the standards, or national colours, which are blue, with the arms of the United States, the spread eagle, &c. are not to be dropped.]

"Brigadier-generals commanding departments or corps of the army, are entitled to the honours payable to major-generals not commanding in chief.

"All other brigadiers are entitled to two ruffles of the drum and presented arms: [no colours to be dropped.]

"To colonels, the guards of their own regiments turn out and present their arms, once a day; after which, they only turn out with ordered arms.

"To lieutenant-colonels and majors, their own guards turn out with ordered arms once a day.—When a lieutenant-colonel or major shall command a regiment, their own quarter guards pay them the compliments due to a colonel.

"Military compliments are to be paid to officers of the navy, when in uniform, agreeable to their relative rank with the officers of the army—which is

Digitized by Google

as follows: [the navy having yet no grade equal to that of major-general.]

Commodores of squadrons, being captains,	Brigadier-generals.
Captains, - - - - -	Colonels.
Master commandants, - - -	Majors.
Lieutenants, - - - - -	Captains.

"[Senior] captains not being in actual command as commodores, will rank only as colonels: and [junior] captains, if commanding a vessel of a class below that to which by law they are entitled, will rank only as majors; unless the combined force under the command of any such captain shall equal that to which a captain in the navy is entitled, in which case they will rank as colonels.—Commodores of flotilla service will have the rank of colonels only.

"When a general, or other officer, entitled to a salute, shall pass in the rear of a guard, it will not face about, but stand with shouldered arms.

"When a general, or other officer, entitled to a salute, shall pass guards while in the act of relieving, both guards will salute, taking the word of command from the senior officer of the two.

"All guards are to be under arms when an armed party may approach their posts; and to parties commanded by a commissioned officer, they will present arms and beat a march, and the officers will salute.

"The colours of a regiment, passing any guard, will be saluted, the drums of the regiment saluting in turn.

"When two regiments meet on a march, the regiment of inferior rank will halt, form, and salute the other, which proceeds on its march with swords drawn, bayonets fixed, trumpets sounding, or drums beating, and colours flying, until it shall have cleared the front of the halted regiment.

"All regiments, marching with standards or colours, have claim to the compliments of a regiment they may meet on their march, not having standards

Digitized by Google

or colours, without regard to the rank of the particular corps."

SALUTES.

"The national salute shall be conformable to the number of States composing the Union.

"A national salute shall be fired on a visit to the post from the President of the United States: [or vice-president when acting as President.]

"Fifteen guns shall be fired on a visit from the vice-president, the secretary of war, secretary of the navy, or a major-general of the army; and thirteen guns on that of a brigadier-general, when commanding a department. No other persons shall be entitled to salutes, and no salutes will be fired to any person, but on his arrival.

"No salutes shall be fired to foreign ships or vessels of war, but in return; and in every case, their salute shall be returned, gun for gun, notice being given.

"No salutes shall be fired to public armed vessels of the United States, under the rate of a frigate, and to these only in return, gun for gun, notice being given.

"At one o'clock, on the fourth day of July of each year, a national salute will be fired from all the military posts and forts in the United States. Salutes shall not be fired from guns of higher caliber than twelve pounders."

MILITARY FUNERALS.

The troops which are drawn out to pay funeral honours to deceased military officers, are to be paraded in the usual manner, with bayonets unfixed.

The order of march is to be reversed.

The number of troops ordered out on such occasions, will be determined according to the rank of the officer to whom the honours are to be paid. From the troops thus detached, there will be a selection for escort, and to execute the firing. The

Digitized by Google

residue of the troops form a part of the procession; non-commissioned officers and privates four abreast; officers two abreast; all with side arms.

Firing of cannon at head quarters, will be regulated by the rank of the officer deceased.

The firing at the grave is the same for all ranks, being three volleys of small arms by the escort or firing party.

At the funeral of a Captain-General, a cannon is to be fired at head quarters, every fifteen minutes, from sunrise to sunset. Two regiments of infantry and four companies of cavalry attend the funeral ceremonies, commanded by a lieutenant-general.

For a Lieutenant-General; the firing at head quarters, is every half hour, from sunrise to sunset. Two regiments of infantry are to attend, and two companies of cavalry, commanded by a major-general.

For a Major-General; the firing at head quarters is once an hour, through the day. One regiment of infantry, and two companies of cavalry attend, commanded by a general of brigade.

For a Brigadier-General; the firing at head quarters is once in an hour and an half, from sunrise to sunset. One regiment of infantry, and one company of cavalry attend, commanded by a colonel.

For a Colonel or Lieutenant-Colonel; the firing at head quarters is two guns at sunrise, two at noon, and two at sunset. One regiment of infantry attend, commanded by a senior major.

For a Major; one battalion of infantry, commanded by a major. One gun at head quarters at sunrise, at noon, and sunset.

For a Captain; three companies of infantry, commanded by the oldest captain.

For a Lieutenant; one grand division, commanded by the oldest captain of the grand division.

Digitized by Google

For an Ensign; one grand division, commanded by a captain.

Non-commissioned Officers, and Privates; attended by the companies to which they respectively belong.

These numbers may not always be conveniently obtained, unless when troops are in actual service, or an army is embodied. In such case, the officer, on whom the duty of calling out the troops may devolve, will proportion them according to circumstances, selecting a suitable number for the firing party and escort.

The Pall bearers are six, invariably. These are composed, when practicable, of officers of the same grade with the deceased.

The troops for the firing, and escort, being in line, before the house where the remains of the deceased are prepared for interment; the procession is formed, and the corpse is then brought out, accompanied by the *Pall bearers*, and received by the troops with *presented* arms. It is then placed in the procession, and the escort *shoulder arms*, break into open column of platoons, and *reverse arms*. Officers draw their swords and reverse them.

The procession being formed, then moves; music playing a dead march, or funeral dirge; drums muffled.

When the procession arrives at the place of *interment*, the escort will file from the right and left of platoons to the front; forming in two lines; *halt*, face inwards, and *rest on arms reversed*. Officers handle their swords, placing the point on the ground, resting the hands on the hilt; the eyes cast downward.

The corpse is carried through the avenue, between the lines of the troops; which continue to rest on arms reversed, until the corpse is let down into the grave. They then shoulder arms; wheel inwards to re-form platoons; and immediately form line.

Digitized by Google

The Commandant, by signal, causes the troops to load and fire three volleys over the grave, at an elevation of forty-five degrees. These orders should be communicated by *tap of the drum.* All orders should be given without noise or bustle; and by signal, if practicable. The party having completed their firings, they shoulder arms; wheel again into open column of platoons; right in front, and march in quick time.

The privates and non-commissioned officers, who are not of the escort, form by eights in the returning procession; commissioned officers by fours, with swords returned.

FORM OF WARNING FOR ANNUAL TRAINING IN MAY.

To either of the non-commissioned officers of the ——— Company ——— Regiment of Infantry.

You are hereby commanded to give legal warning to all the members of said company to appear on —— on the first Monday of May next, at 8 o'clock, A.M. armed and equipped as the law directs, for exercise and inspection.

April —— A. B. Capt. of said Company.

When a company have one uniform place of parade, the blank may be filled with, *the usual place of parade:* but if they have more than one place of parade, then the place must be designated.

The captain must send the above order in writing to each of the non-commissioned officers who are to warn the company, which writing, in the words of the law, 'is to be read in the hearing of, or a copy thereof to be left at the usual place of abode of the person to be warned.' If the non-commissioned officers are to warn the several members by leaving a copy, then printed copies may be used; and certified on the back, by the officer who warns them, in the following manner:

The within is a true copy of the original order.

Attest, *C. D. Sergeant (or corporal) of said Company.*

Digitized by Google

No reading of a warning is considered legal, unless it be the original order, and that in writing.

FORM OF A WARNING FOR THE CHOICE OF A CAPTAIN AND OTHER OFFICERS, EXCLUSIVELY.

To either of the non-commissioned officers of the ——— Company ——— Regiment of Infantry.

In pursuance of an order from the Brigadier-General of the —— Brigade of Infantry—You are hereby commanded to give legal warning to all the members of said company, to appear on ——— on —— the —— instant, at 2 o'clock, P. M. with arms and uniform, for the choice of a captain, and to fill all vacancies.

A. B. Capt. of said Company.

Dated ——

If the company be commanded by a lieutenant, he will sign the order,

E. F. *Lieut. Commanding said Company.*

FORM OF A WARNING FOR BATTALION REVIEW.

To either of the non-commissioned officers of the ——— Company ——— Regiment of Infantry.

In pursuance of an order from the Colonel of the —— Regiment of Infantry, you are hereby commanded to give legal warning to all the members of said company, to appear on the parade [describing the place] on [the day of the week] the [the day of the month] at [the hour of the day] o'clock, A. M. armed and equipped as the law directs, for inspection, review, and exercise.

A. B. Capt. of said company.

Dated ——

After closing the exercises of the day, and the captain wishing to warn his company to appear on a subsequent day, he will make out one of the foregoing warnings, which is to be read in the hearing of the company by one of the non-commissioned officers, which is considered as legal warning for all the members present.

FINIS.

Digitized by Google

ERRATA.

It will be well for the reader to make the following corrections with a pen or pencil.

Page 33, sixth line from bottom, after the word right, read *hand.*

Page 34, fourth line from top, in the word intended for *against*, transpose the letters *st* and *in*.

Page 39, in the motion of *order arms*, both motions as inserted should be read as one; the second motion is through mistake omitted, which is, *to drop the piece to the ground, and drop the left hand.*

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building

JUL - 7 19[illegible]

form 410